













**GRAMMATICAL NOTES AND  
VOCABULARY  
OF  
Naganuma Primer  
FAR EASTERN LANGUAGE DIVISION**

October 1948

**ARMY LANGUAGE SCHOOL**

Presidio of Monterey, California





*U. S. Army Language School, Monterey,  
Calif.*

GRAMMATICAL NOTES

AND

VOCABULARY

OF

NAGANUMA PRIMIER

113

THE ARMY LANGUAGE SCHOOL  
FAR EASTERN LANGUAGE DIVISION  
Presidio of Monterey, California

September 1948





# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 1. (Dai ikka)

これ	kore	this (pronoun).*
は	wa	a separative postposition, used to set off the notional subject, and may be translated "as for.....".*
本	hon	book (noun).*
です	desu	(it) is; (they) are (copula, or linking verb). It is the contracted form of "de arimasu".*
赤い	akai	red (adj.) *
か	ka	(interrogative postposition). *
はい	nai	yes. *
そう	sō	so; that way. *
そうです	sō desu	it is (so); that is how (what) it is. *
白い	shiroi	white (adj.)
いいえ	iee	no. *
じゃありません	ja arimasen	(it) is not. "Ja" is the contracted form of "de wa". "Ja arimasen" is the negative form of the copular "desu".*
何	nan (nani)	what (interrogative pronoun).
箱	hako	box (noun).
あの	ano	that (over there). (demonstrative pronoun).
青い	aoi	blue; green (adj.)
ん	n'	contraction of <u>NO</u> meaning "one", and frequently referred to as a "nominalizer", or a "substantivizer".
それ	sore	that (near); it. (demonstrative pronoun).

\* See grammatical notes

いす	isu	chair (noun).
あれ	are	that (over there).. (pronoun). Used chiefly in referring to something relatively far away from both the speaker and the person spoken to. *

\* See grammatical notes

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 1 (Dai ikka)

#### Pronouns

KORE, "this"; SORE, "that (near)"; ARE, "that (far)";  
DORE, "which (indefinite)."

In Japanese, a clear distinction is made between a near "that" (SORE) and a further "that" (ARE). The above-listed words are the substantive forms of the demonstrative pronouns. The following chart shows other demonstrative pronouns. Care should be taken to note the distinction made between "near" and "far" pronouns.

	things	direction	place	things persons (humble)	attribu- tive	desig- nate	meta- phorical
nearer (KO-)	KORE (this)	KOCHIRA, KOTCHI (this way)	KOKO (here)	KOITSU (this one)	KONNA (this type)	KONO (this)	KŌ (like this)
near (SO-)	SORE (that)	SOCHIRA, SOTCHI (that way)	SOKO (there)	SOITSU (that one)	SONNA (that type)	SONO (that)	SŌ (like that)
far (A-)	ARE (that over there)	ACHIRA, ATCHI (that way over there)	ASUKO (over there)	AITSU (that one over there)	ANNA (that type over there)	ANO (that over there)	Ā (like that over there)
indefi- nite (DO-)	DORE (which)	DOCHIRA, DOTCHI (which way)	DOKO (where)	DOITSU (which one)	DONNA (which type)	DONO (which)	DŌ (which)

The above pronouns are sometimes known as  
"KO-SO-A-DO" pronouns.



## WA

WA is used as an isolating particle (postposition). It is used to single out a word, phrase, or clause about which a further statement is made. Although, at the beginning of a sentence not containing a subject followed by the postposition GA, the word to which WA is attached may be regarded as the subject; it may be best translated "as for....." Sometimes it implies the force of the definite article "the." E.g.

KORE WA HON DESU. "This is a book."  
HON WA KORE DESU. "This is the book."

## Nouns

Japanese nouns have neither article, number, nor gender as a rule; and they are not inflected. Strictly speaking, they also lack in case; this deficiency is supplied by postpositions (particles).

## DESU

The copula or linking verb, DESU, is the contracted form of DE ARIMASU. DE indicates that the noun or pronoun preceding it is the subjective complement (predicate nominative) or it indicates the second member of a copulative (equation) sentence in which the verb is ARIMASU. ARIMASU is the inanimate form of the existential or specifying verb equivalent to the English copulative verb "to be." DESU and their stems are used immediately after substantives.

The negative form of DESU is JA ARIMASEN. JA is the reduced form of DE WA. In the negative construction, DE ARIMASU changes to DE WA ARIMASEN. When negative ARIMASEN is used, the antecedent particle DE usually takes WA to emphasize the negative idea. The politeness is reduced when DE WA is reduced to JA.

## Adjectives

Adjectives are of two kinds: True adjectives and quasi-adjectives. The true adjectives are conjugated and end in KU, I, KERE. The attributive stem of the adjectives is I. When used attributively, the adjective is placed before the noun. E.g.

KORE WA AKAI HON DESU. "This is a red book."

## (AOI) N' DESU

N' DESU placed after the true adjective is the reduced form of NO DESU. The particle NO, originally a possessive or genitive postposition, is used as a pronoun which corresponds to the English, "one." AOI N' DESU, there-

fore, means "it is a blue one." However, NO has come to lose its full implication and reduced to N'. For all practical purposes, therefore, N' DESU should be regarded as the polite ending of the predicate adjective. (The familiar form of NO DESU is NO DA, and the familiar form of N' DESU is N' DA).

### KA

In an interrogative sentence, the person, action, or thing about which the question is asked is placed first and followed by WA, the interrogative pronoun or substantive comes next, the verb or inflected suffix (DESU or DA) next, and the interrogative postposition KA last. Therefore, KA, coming at the end of a sentence, makes it interrogative; it is the equivalent of a question mark. E.g.,

KORE WA NAN DESU KA      "What is this?"

The structure of the interrogative sentence is identical with that of the declarative sentence except for the interrogative word (or words) and the interrogative postposition KA, which is placed at the end of the sentence. The interrogative postposition KA may be omitted when there is an interrogative word in the sentence, but it is preferable to use it.

### HAI and IIE

HAI and IIE are not the exact equivalents of the English adverbs "yes" and "no." The procedure in answering a question that is put in positive form is the same as in English; however, when a question is stated negatively, the answer may be either HAI or IIE followed by an affirmative or negative statement, for these responses are often made with greater reference to the particular opinion or viewpoint held by the questioner. In such cases, HAI means "what you are thinking is right"; and IIE means "what you are thinking is wrong."

### HAI, SŌ DESU and IIE, SŌ JA ARIMASEN

HAI, SŌ DESU means "yes, that is what or how it is"; and IIE, SŌ JA ARIMASEN means "no, that is not so." or "no, that is not what it is." These forms are properly used when the question ends with DESU KA. SŌ, in this case, is a suffix derived from SAYŌ (that way or so).



Lesson 1 (Dai ikka)

Fill in the blank spaces

第一課

一、

は何ですか。

二、

それは本です。

三、

あれは白い本か。

四、

いゝえ、じゃありません。

五、

は赤い本。

六、

これは箱ですか。

七、

はい、は箱です。

八、

それは青いいます。ありませんか。

九、

いゝえ、は白いです。

十、

あのはです。

十一、

は本ではありません。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 1

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. That is a box.
2. What is this? This is a chair.
3. What is that (over there)? That (over there) is a book.
4. Is that a book? No, it isn't.
5. Is this a blue book? Yes, it is.
6. What is that? This is a white chair.
7. That is a red box. This is a blue chair.
8. What is that? That is a white book.
9. Is that box (over there) red? No, it is blue.
10. Is the chair white? No, it is red.
11. This is not a box. It is a book.
12. What is this? It is a chair. Is it a red chair? No, it isn't.  
It is a blue chair.
13. That is not a red book. That is a red box.
14. Is that chair (over there) blue? Yes, it is.
15. Is this a white book? Yes, it is.
16. Is the book white? Yes, it is.
17. Is this not a red chair? It is not a red chair.
18. Isn't that a book?
19. That book (over there) is blue.
20. This chair is white.



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 2 (Dai nika)

この	kono	this (pronoun); see grammatical notes for Lesson 1.
大きい	ōkii	large; big (adj.).
小さい	chiisai	small; little (adj.).
糸	ito	thread; string (n.).
その	sono	that (pronoun); see grammatical notes for Lesson 1.
長い	nagai	long (adj.).
短い	mijikai	short (adj.). (Not used in referring to a person's height).
どんな	donna	which; what (indefinite pronoun - see grammatical notes for Lesson 1.)
色	iro	color (n.).
かみ	kami	paper (n.).
むらさき	murasaki	purple; violet color (n.).
もゝ色	mono-iro	pink color (n.).
みどり	midori	green (n.).
みどりの	midori no	green (quasi-adjective). *
きいろい	kiroi	yellow (adj.).
-----か -----か	....ka, ....ka	...., or ....? *

\* See grammatical notes.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 2 (Dai nika)

#### Quasi-Adjectives

Almost any noun may be changed into a quasi-adjective. To form a quasi-adjective, NO is generally added to concrete nouns, and NA to abstract nouns. NO is the possessive postposition and NA is a corruption of the classical verb NARU. The quasi-adjectives may be conjugated according to the various uses; however, for the attributive use, the stem NO or NA is used in front of nouns to be modified. E.g.,

MIDORI	NO	"green"	BAKA	NA	"foolish"
KAMI	NO	"made of paper"	ŌKI	NA	"large"

#### KA.....KA

The postposition KA may be used between two substantives, after each of two substantives, or after two clauses, to show that the action of a verb or the state described by an adjective or quasi-adjective is restricted to one or the other of the two: "or," "either.....or," "whether.....or,"

E.g., ITO WA NAGAI N' DESU KA, MIJIKAI N' DESU KA.  
"Is the string long or short?"

Note: Only the predicate is repeated in the second clause.

Fill in the blank spaces

第二課

- 一、この本 大きい です。
- 二、箱は 青い です。 いゝえ、 んです。
- 三、この は 長い ですか。 いゝえ、 短いん。
- 四、あの かみ は ですか。 はい、 長い。
- 五、青い 箱は ですか。 いゝえ、 小さい す。
- 六、あの 本は どんな ですか。 むらさき です。
- 七、きいろい 箱は 小さい ですか、 大きい か。
- 八、あの 糸は 色 か。
- 九、あれは 箱 か、 本 か。
- 十、あれは です。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 2

1. Is that chair red? No, it is pink.
2. What color is the large book? It is green.
3. This paper is pink. That chair is red.
4. Is this piece of string short? No, it is long.
5. The yellow sheet of paper is white.
6. Is that box purple or pink?
7. Is the long piece of string yellow? No, it is green.
8. What is that (over there)? That (over there) is a purple piece of paper.
9. Is the small book red or is it green?
10. Is that (over there) a box or a book? It is a book.



## VOCABULARY

### Lesson 3 (Dai san ka)

花	hana	flower; blossom (n.).
何の	nan-no	what (quasi-adj.); what kind (sort) of; of what variety. *
さくら	sakura	cherry-tree; cherry-blossom (n.).
桃色	momoiro	pink (n.).
すみれ	sumire	violet (flower or plant) (n.).
木	ki	tree; wood (n.).
草	kusa	plant; green; weeds (n.).

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 3 (Dai san ka)

#### NO

NO was originally a possessive postposition, and it is equivalent to "of".

E.g.: HON NO IRO. "Color of a book."

NO, placed between two substantives, usually makes the first substantive the modifier of the second. (See Grammatical Notes, Lesson 2, Quasi-adjectives.)

E.g.: SAKURA NO HANA. "Cherry blossoms" or "blossoms of a cherry-tree."

Fill in the blank spaces.

第三課

一、さくらの　　は　どんな　　ですか。　桃　　です。

二、これは　　の　木　ですか。はい、　　の　　です。

三、あの　　の花は　さくらの　　ですか。はい、　　桃色の  
は　　の花です。

四、これは　何　　か。　　は　すみれ　　です。

五、その　箱　は　　色　　ですか。いゝえ、　　は　　いんです。

六、すみれ　は　　ありません、草　　です。

七、これは　何の　　ですか。それは　　の木　　です。

八、この　さくらの　　不　　大きい　　ですか、　　木　　ですか。

九、すみれ　は　長い　　ですか、　　い草　　ですか。

十、すみれ　は　　早じや　　、短い　　です。

Answer the following questions in Japanese:

- 一、草はどんな色ですか。
- 二、さくらは草ですか。
- 三、すみれは木ですか。
- 四、すみれの花はどんな色ですか。
- 五、さくらの花の色は何ですか。
- 六、さくらの花はひらさきですか。
- 七、すみれの花は大きいんですか。
- 八、さくらの木はひらさきですか。
- 九、すみれの花の色は桃色ですか。
- 十、桃の花はどんな色ですか。

## Translation Exercises

### Lesson 3

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. The color of this flower is not purple. It is red.
2. That purple box is small.
3. What sort of a tree is that? It is a large tree.
4. What tree is that? It is a cherry tree.
5. The paper box is large. The wooden chair is small.
6. This pink flower is the cherry blossom.
7. That small paper box is not green.
8. Is the violet a tree? No, it is not a tree. It is a plant.
9. What plant is this? That is a violet.
10. Is that (over there) a pink chair or a small box?



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 4 (Dai shi ka, dai yon ka)

どうぞ

dōzo

please; kindly (ad.).

Generally used at the beginning of the sentence.

立つ (立つて) tatsu (tatte)

to stand (up); rise (v.i.).

Bases:

Imperfective.....tata - ;

Conjunctive.....tatchi - ;

Conclusive.....tatsu ;

Attributive.....tatsu - ;

Conditional.....tate - ;

Imperative.....tate.

When the conjunctive particle "-te" follows the conjunctive base "tatchi", "tatte" is used instead of "tachite." \*

下さい

kudasai

auxiliary verb placed after the conjunctive particle - TE or - DE to indicate a polite request.

May be translated: "Please....", "Be so kind as to.....", or "Please do.....for (to) me". \*

立って下さい

tatte kudasai

please stand up.

(dōzo emphasizes kudasai and makes the request more humble).

私

watakushi

I (pronoun).

居る (居ます)

iru (imasu)

auxiliary verb placed after the conjunctive form of the verb to denote progressive action, or persisting state or condition.

Equivalent to the English word "to be".

歩く (歩いて)

aruku (aruite)

to walk (v.i.), (regular verb). ARUITE is the assimilated conjunctive form of the verb ARUKU. \*

戸

to

door (n.).

\* See grammatical notes

あける(あけて)	akeru (akete)	to open (v.t.), (semi-reg. verb). AKETE is the conjunctive form of the verb AKERU.
を	wo	particle denoting the direct object.
しめる(しめて)	shimeru (shimete)	to close; shut (v.t.), (semi-reg. verb). SHIMETE is the conjunctive form of the verb SHIMERU.
こしかける (こしかけて)	koshikakeru (koshikakete)	to sit (down) (v.i.), (semi-reg. verb). KOSHIKAKETE is the conjunctive form of the verb KOSHIKAKERU.
えんぴつ	empitsu	pencil (n.).
取る(取つて)	toru (totte)	to take (v.t.), (reg. verb). TOTTE is the assimilated conjunctive form of the verb TORU.
見る (見て)	miru (mite)	to look; see; examine (v.t.), (semi-reg. verb). MITE is the conjunctive form of the verb MIRU.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 4 (Dai shi ka)

#### -TE or -DE: The Conjunctive Particle

Verbs and adjectives are joined by the use of the conjunctive particle -TE or -DE.

E.g., WATAKUSHI WA TATTE, HON WO MITE IMASU.  
"I am standing up and looking at a book."

All the verbs in direct line of thought or action are put into the conjunctive form except the last one. The last verb is followed by auxiliary verb suffixes which determine the voice, mode, tense, degree of politeness, etc., of the preceding verb or verbs.

The conjunctive form of the verb followed by the existential verb IMASU or IRU describes progressive action or persisting state or condition.

IMASU is the polite form of the verb IRU which means "to be" or "to exist" and is in the present tense.

In the progressive construction IMASU or IRU loses its real meaning value; it comes after another verb with intervening particle, and it is used functionally to assist in expressing the grammatical notion of the progressive. IMASU or IRU is, therefore, an auxiliary (post) verb in this construction.

MITE IMASU, therefore, means, "I am looking," or "I am in the state or process of looking."

The particle -TE attached to the conjunctive stem of the verb or adjective acts merely to connect two clauses: "and."

The conjunctive stem of verbs plus NASAI or plus -TE plus KUDASAI renders the most frequently used imperatives. The form in KUDASAI is more polite and its use expresses a request rather than a command.

#### Verb Bases and the Conjunctive Form

Every verb has six bases to which are joined the different auxiliary verb suffixes which change the voice, mode, tense, degree of politeness, etc., of the verb.

The six bases are "imperfective", "conjunctive", "conclusive", "attributive", "conditional" and "imperative". In the colloquial, however, no differentiation between "conclusive" and "attributive" is made. All verbs are mentioned in the conclusive base form or the -U ending.

Verbs are classified according to the way in which they derive their six bases.

They are regular if their six bases end with the vowels, -A-, -I-, -U, and -E-. In other words, regular verb bases follow the arrangement of the syllables in the syllabary, e.g., A, I, U, E; KA, KI, KU, KE; SA, SHI, SU, SE, etc.



They are semi-regular, if the conclusive or attributive form is -IRU or -ERU. The six bases of -IRU verbs are, -I-, -I-, -IRU, -IRU; -IRE and -I; and the six bases of -ERU verbs are, -E-, -E-, -ERU, -ERU-, -ERE, and -E.

Japanese has only two irregular verbs and they are KURU, "to come"; and SURU, "to do." The six bases of KURU are, KO-, KI-, KURU, KURU-, KURE-, and KOI. The verb SURU has three first base forms which are SA-, SE-, and SHI-. The complete list of verb bases for SURU; therefore, are:

imperfective	-	SA-, SE-, and SHI
conjunctive	-	SHI-
conclusive	-	SURU
attributive	-	SURU-
conditional	-	SURE-
imperative	--	SE(YO), SHI(RO).

### Auxiliary Verb Suffixes and Conjunctive Particle

Auxiliary verb suffixes like, -MASU and -MASEN and the conjunctive particles like, -TE or -DE cannot be joined indiscriminately to any base.

-MASU and -MASEN, for instance, are joined to the conjunctive base.

-TE, the conjunctive particle, is joined to the conjunctive base of the semi-regular and the irregular verbs, but to the assimilated conjunctive base of the regular verbs.

### Assimilated Conjunctive Base and the Conjunctive Particles -TE or -DE

The conjunctive base of regular verbs in the colloquial form undergoes phonetic changes when it is followed by the conjunctive particle -TE or -DE.

Regular verbs which end in -SU, however, are exceptions to this rule. The conjunctive particle -TE is affixed to the conjunctive base of these verbs without any phonetic changes.

The following table will show how the conjunctive base of the various types of regular verbs is assimilated.

Meaning	Familiar forms - Conclusive base	Transitional forms - Conjunctive base plus -TE	Assimilated forms - Conjunctive base plus -TE or -DE
"to read"	YOMU	YO(MI)-TE	YON-DE
"to call"	YOBU	YO(BI)-TE	YON-DE
"to die"	SHINU	SHIN(I)-TE	SHIN-DE
"to swim"	OYOGU	OYO(G)I-TE	OYOI-DE
"to walk"	ARUKU	ARU(K)I-TE	ARUI-TE
"to say, tell"	IU	II-TE	IT-TE
"to buy"	KAU	KAI-TE	KAT-TE
"to inhale"	SUU	SUI-TE	SUT-TE
"to think"	OMOU	OMOI-TE	OMOT-TE
"to stand"	TATSU	TA(CHI)-TE	TAT-TE
"to sell"	URU	U(RI)-TE	UT-TE
"to know"	SHIRU	SHI(RI)-TE	SHIT-TE

Fill in the blank spaces.

第四課

一、どうぞ立って。

二、私は戸をあけて。

三、どうぞ本を下さい。

四、私はかみ取って。

五、立下さい。

六、私は花を見居ます。

七、どうぞをあけて。

八、はいすに居ます。

九、私はを取って居ます。

十、私は立って色のを居ます。

## Translation Exercises

### Lesson 4

Translate the following into Japanese.

1. Please stand up.
2. Please look at the book.
3. Please hand me the white paper.
4. Am I walking or standing?
5. What are you taking?
6. Are you standing? Yes, I am standing.
7. Please be seated. I am seated.
8. Will you please pass me the blue book?
9. Please shut the green book. I am shutting it.
10. Am I looking at the short pencil?



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 5 (Dai go ka)

つくえ	tsukue	desk (n.).
上	ue	upper part (n.); top side; above; top.
に	ni	in; on; at. (particle indicating locale with verbs meaning "to be" arimasu, imasu).
が	ga	particle which indicates that the preceding word is the subject of a clause or sentence. *
ある(あります)	aru (arimasu)	to be; to exist (v.i.), (verb denoting existence, as contrasted to "desu" which is a copula). "arimasu" is the conjunctive base of the verb "aru" plus -masu. "arimasu" is more polite. *
ぼうし	hōshi	hat; cap (n.).
と	to	and. (particle indicating that the substantive to which it is attached is in a series of substantives, all named: "and." "to" may or may not be attached to the last substantive.
かばん	kaban	brief case; satchel; bag (n.).
この	kono	this (pronoun).
あなた	anata	you (pronoun). (polite form).
あなたの	anata no	your; yours.
黒い	kuroi	black (adj.).
黒く	kuroku	black (conjunctive - adverbial adj.).*
ありがたい	arigatai	kind; obliging; blessed (adj.). *
ありがとう ごさいます	arigatō gozaimasu gozaimasu	thank you; much obliged to you. *
おく(おいて)	oku (oite)	to place; put (down) (t.v.). OITE is the assimilated conjunctive form of the verb OKU.

\* See grammatical notes.

どこ

doko

what place; where (interrogative pronoun).

### GRAMMATICAL NOTES

#### Lesson 5 (Dai go ka)

....GA ....NI ....ARIMASU.

The subject of an existential verb meaning "to be", i.e., ARIMASU (inanimate), or IMASU (animate), is followed by the particle GA, and the word denoting the place where the thing in question is to be found is followed by the particle NI. Plants are considered inanimate.

HON GA TSUKUE NO UE NI ARIMASU.

"There is a book on (top of) the desk."

ISU NO UE NI HANI GA ARIMASU KA. \*

What is on (top of) the chair?

\* The adverbial phrase of place is placed before the subject for emphasis.

### Conjunctive-Adverbial Adjectives

All true adjectives have a conjunctive-adverbial form. This form is derived by changing the final -I to -KU. In front of such intransitive verbs as ARIMASU (to be), HITEMASU (to appear, look) and NARIMASU (to become), true adjectives change their endings to -KU.

E.g., KUROKU ARIMASU. "(It) is black."

KUROKU JA ARIMASEN. \* "(It) is not black."

\* WA is inserted between the conjunctive-adverbial adjective and the verb because the verb is in the negative form. Compare with "KUROI NI JA ARIMASEN", "It is not a black one". (See grammatical notes, Lesson 1.)

### ARIGATŌ

ARIGATŌ is the form derived from the adjective ARIGATAI when it is followed by the verb GOZAIMASU ("to be," polite form) and ZONJIMASU ("to understand," "to think," polite form).

All true adjectives have this special conjunctive form. The stem ends in Ō when the conclusive stem ends in -AI or OI, Ū when the conclusive stem ends in UI or II.

E.g., SHIROI - "white".

SHIRŌ GOZAIMASU. "(It) is white."

SAMUI - "cold".

SAMŪ GOZAIMASU. "It is cold."

Lesson 5

Fill in the blank spaces.

第五課

一、その 上 何 あります か。

二、かみ えんぴつ あります。

三、此の 箱 あなた ですか。

四、これ 私 箱 か。

五、いっえ、それは の 箱 ありません。

六、あなた 本 つくえの 上 おいて 。

七、あの 本 どこ ありますか。

八、あの 箱 上 おいて 。

九、どうぞ その を て 下さい。 ありがとう 。

十、青い と 黒い は どこ おいて か。

Lesson 5 (Continued)

Answer the following questions in Japanese:

- 一、あなたはこしかけて居ますか。
- 二、私は立つて居ますか。
- 三、あなたの本はどこにありますか。
- 四、つくえの上に何がありますか。
- 五、あなたのかばんはどんな色ですか。
- 六、あなたのぼうしは白いんですか。
- 七、あかいえんぴつはどこにありますか。
- 八、あの箱はどこにありますか。
- 九、あなたは歩いて居ますか。
- 十、すみれの花はむらさきですか。



## Translation Exercises

### Lesson 5

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. The brief case is not black.
2. What is there on the desk?
3. Is there a flower on the box?
4. There are a book and a hat.
5. Please put it on the desk.
6. This hat is not mine.
7. Where is your hat? It's on the chair.
8. Is this large hat yours or mine?
9. Are you sitting or standing?
10. What are you looking at?

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 6 (Dai rokka)

かお	kao	face (n.).
には	niwa	See grammatical notes
口	kuchi	mouth (n.).
はな	hana	nose (n.).
目	me	eye (n.).
いくつ	ikutsu	how many
つ	-tsu	general numerical classifier used in conjunction with the numerals from 1 to 9 read in Japanese.
二つ	futatsu	two (from "futa—" and "—tsu").
右	migi	right; right-hand side (n.).
で	de	"de" is the conjunctive form of "da", and may be translated as: (it) is..... and .....
左	hidari	left; left-hand side (n.).
耳	mimi	ear (n.).
一つ	hitotsu	one (from "hito" and "—tsu").
で	de	particle denoting means, instrument, material or medium: "with," "of," "by."
もの	mono	thing (concrete) (n.).
おと	oto	sound; noise (n.).
聞く(聞きます)	kiku (kikimasu)	to hear; listen; ask (for infor- mation) (v.t.). kiki- is the conjunctive stem of the regular verb kiku.

とじる(とじて) tojiru (tojite) to shut; close (v.t.) (semi-reg.).  
tojite is the conjunctive form  
of the semi-reg. verb tojiru.

今 ima now; the present.

見える(見えます) mieru (miemasu) to be visible; be seen; (can) see  
(v.i.) (semi-reg.). Intransitive  
form of MIRU. mie- is the con-  
junctive stem of the verb mieru.\*

\* See grammatical notes.

### GRAMMATICAL NOTES

#### Lesson 6 (Dai rokka)

#### KAO NI WA NANI GA ARIMASU KA

The particle, WA, is used here to single out the phrase, KAO NI.  
For the explanation of the construction, .....NI.....GA ARIMASU, see  
grammatical notes, Lesson 5.

#### DE

DE is the conjunctive form of the inflected suffix (auxiliary verb),  
DA, and is attached to substantives to bluntly specify them. Forms in  
DESHITE and DESU are more polite than those in DE and DA; of the latter,  
DE is in perfectly good usage in ordinary conversation. The conjunctive  
form may be used at the end of a clause in a compound sentence.

Fill in the blank spaces.

第六課

一、 口 はな 目 があります。

二、 目 もの 見、耳 おと を 。

三、 これ 本 あれ 箱 。

四、 どうぞ 目 とじて 。

五、 私 耳 二つ、 目 が はな 一つ、 口 が

一つ 。

六、 あなた 目 大 です。私 目 小 です。

七、 あなた 目 青い か、黒 か。

八、 私 はな いくつ か。

九、 かお 何 が か。

十、 口 上 何 が か。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 6

Translate the following into Japanese.

1. This is a nose.
2. There are two brief cases.
3. Do you see things with your eyes?
4. I have one nose and two ears.
5. To the right of me, is a chair.
6. My eyes are not black.
7. Please close your mouth and open your eyes.
8. Please look at my face now. What is there on my face?
9. Please rise and close the door.
10. This is my left ear and this is my right ear.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson (Dai shichi ka)

え	e	picture; drawing; painting (n.) (cf. photograph, shashin)
ごらんなさい	goran nasai	please look at or see (honorific imperative).*
テーブル	tēburu	table (n.).
二	ni	two (ON or Chinese reading)*
さつ	satsu	a volume; a copy (numerical classifier for books and magazines)
左の	hidari no	the one on the left; the left (-hand) one. --cf., "anata no" (Les. 5) which means "your", "yours" or "one which is yours".
あつい(あつくて)	atsui (atsukute)	thick (adj.). "atsukute" is the con- junctive or -TE form of the real adjective "atsui."*
字引	jibiki	dictionary (n.).
日本	Nihon (Nippon)	Japan (n.) (cf., Ni'-hon).*
日本語	Nihongo	Japanese language (n.).
日本語の	Nihongo no	Japanese (quasi-adj.).
英語	Eigo	English language (n.).
丸い	marui	round (adj.).
四角	shikaku	square; rectangle (n.).
足	ashi	leg; foot (n.).
本	hon	numerical classifier for long, slender objects.*
いく本	iku-hon	how many (long, slender objects).*
四	shi (Chinese reading)	four.

三	san (Chinese reading)	three.
三本	sambon (san-bon)	three (long, slender objects),*
しか	shika	only. "shika" is a particle always placed after the noun, pronoun or the equivalent and always followed by a negative verb, with restrictive force: "only." The verb must be rendered <u>positively</u> .
一	ichi (Chinese reading)	one.
一本	ippon	one (long, slender object).*
かくれる (かくれて)	kakureru (kakurete)	to be hidden, concealed (v.i.) (semi-reg.) Bases: Imperfective.....kakure-; Conjunctive.....kakure-; Conclusive.....kakureru; Attributive.....kakureru-; Conditional.....kakurere-; Imperative.....kakure. KAKURETE is the conjunctive form of the semi-reg. verb KAKURERU.
ひくい	hikui	low (adj.).
ひくうて	hikukute	low and....(conjunctive or -TE form of real adjective.)*
たかい	takai	high; tall; expensive (adj.).
たかくて	takakute	high and.....; tall and.....; expensive and..... TAKAKUTE is the conjunctive or -TE form of the real adjective TAKAI.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 7 (Dai shichi ka)

#### GORAN-NASAI

Although the most frequently used imperatives are rendered by the conjunctive stem of verbs plus -NASAI or the conjunctive form plus -KUDASAI, the form GORAN-NASAI, "please look at or see," is exceptional, since NASAI is attached to noun borrowed from the Chinese language. Following a form in -TE, GORAN-NASAI helps to express a request, but with the force "try and."

- E.g., KONO E WO GORAN-NASAI. "Please look at this picture."  
DŌZO TACHI NASAI. "Please stand up."  
DŌZO TATTE KUDASAI. "Please stand up," or "Please favor me by standing up."  
HANAKO, TATTE GORAN-NASAI. Hanako, please (try and) stand up.

The forms in -KUDASAI imply favor rendered toward the first person.

#### ATSUKUTE KUROI HON

ATSUKUTE is the conjunctive form of the true adjective ATSUI (attributive). The conjunctive form of the true adjective is formed by joining the particle -TE to the conjunctive stem -KU.

Since KUROI can be either attributive or predicative, it can be regarded as coordinate with ATSUKUTE. Therefore, ATSUKUTE KUROI HON, constitutes a noun HON modified by a clause. The particle -TE attached to ATSUKU- acts merely to connect two clauses: "and." Therefore, ATSUKUTE KUROI HON can be translated as "a book which is thick and black." Actually the phrase "a thick black book" can be translated by placing one attributive adjective right after the other before the noun, e.g., ATSUI KUROI HON. But for all practical purposes, ATSUKUTE KUROI HON can be translated as "a thick black book." However, it must be remembered that ATSUKUTE is more forceful than ATSUI.

When two or more real adjectives are placed one after another, all except the last can be put in the conjunctive or -TE form.

- E.g., ŌKIKUTE ATSUKUTE AKAI HON. "A large thick red book."

Futhermore, when a number of true and quasi-adjectives follow one another, all except the last can be put in the conjunctive form provided the quasi-adjectives are derived from abstract nouns, such as "beauty," "color," etc.

- E.g., NAGAKUTE MURASAKI NO ITO. "A long purple thread."  
SHIROKUTE KIREI NA KAMI. "A clean white sheet of paper."



However, when the quasi-adjective is derived from a concrete noun, such as those indicating time, place, quantity, material, language, etc., the adjectives preceding it should be put in the attributive form.

E.g., ŌKII NIHONGO NO HON "A large Japanese book."  
KIREI NA KAMI NO HAKO "A beautiful paper box."

### Numerals

In counting from one to two the Japanese use chiefly ten sets of numerals. One is of Chinese origin and the other is of Japanese origin. Numbers above ten are counted in Chinese.

	<u>Chinese</u>	<u>Japanese</u>
1	ICHI.....	HITO-TSU
2	NI.....	FUTA-TSU
3	SAN.....	MI-T-TSU
4	SHI.....	YO-T-TSU
5	GO.....	ITSU-TSU
6	ROKU.....	MU-T-TSU
7	SHICHI.....	NANA-TSU
8	HACHI.....	YA-T-TSU
9	KU.....	KOKONO-TSU
10	JŪ.....	TŪ

The pattern followed after ten is as follows:

11	JŪICHI	24	NIJŪSHI
12	JŪNI	25	NIJŪGO
13	JŪSAN	36	SANJŪROKU

### IKU-HON

The interrogative form of the compound numerals is expressed by substituting the numeral part with IKU-. Though IKU is of Japanese origin, IKU- is found sometimes before the Chinese numerical classifiers and does not undergo any phonetic change.

E.g., IKU-HON, IKU-TSU

### HIKUKU-TE

Real adjectives conjugate. The chief bases are: conjunctive, conclusive, attributive, and conditional. The conjunctive stem followed by -TE renders a conjunctive form. E.g.

HIKU-KU.....	Conjunctive.
HIKU-I.....	Conclusive
HIKU-I.....	Attributive
HIKU-KERE.....	Conditional

HIKUKUTE, therefore, is the conjunctive form of the real adjective HIKUI.

Lesson 7

Fill in the blank spaces.

第七課

- 一、此の本      くらん      。
- 二、テーブル      上      字引      二さつ      あります。
- 三、右      箱      上      本      一      あります。
- 四、これ      日本語      字引      か。
- 五、いゝえ、それ      英語      字引      。
- 六、あの 青い 箱      四角      ですか。
- 七、その      には 足      いく本      か。 四本
- 八、此の いす      上      本      いくさつ      か。
- 九、四本      足      見      か。 いゝえ、三本      しか
- 十、その あつくて      い 本 は 私      じゃ      。

Lesson 7

Answer the following questions in Japanese:

- 一、あの テーブル には 足 が いく本 ありますか。
- 二、私の 耳 は 今 かくれて 届ますか。
- 三、此の 箱 は 四角 ですか、丸い んですか。
- 四、あの いす には 足 が 三本 しか ありませんか。
- 五、それは 英語 の 字引 ですか。日本語 の 字引 ですか。
- 六、あの 大きくて 青い のは なんですか。
- 七、あなたの つくえ の 上 には 字引 が いくさつ ちりますか。
- 八、あなた には 足 が いく本 ありますか。
- 九、私 には 目 が いくつ ありますか。
- 十、テーブル の 上 には 花 が いくつ ありますか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 7

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Look at the flower. Where is it? It's on the table.
2. There are three books on the table. The thick blue one is not an English dictionary.
3. That table is round and that book is square.
4. The square wooden table is not visible now.
5. Can you see the blue, English book now?
6. My round table has only three legs.
7. The Japanese dictionary is hidden now.
8. I have only three books. How many have you?
9. This chair is white and small.
10. How many pencils are there on the table?



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 8 (Dai hakka)

きつて	kitte	stamp (postage) (n.).
ペン	pen	pen (n.).
すみ	sumi	corner (inner corner) (n.).
左の上のすみ	hidari no ue no sumi	upper left-hand corner.*
下	shita	lower part; down; below; beneath; bottom (n.).
中	naka	the inside; the interior (n.).
まん中	mannaka	middle; center (n.).
こゝ	koko	this place; here (n.).
もう一つ	mō hitotsu	one more; another (one)*
マッチ	matchi	match (n.).
ぼう	bō	stick; rod (n.).
枚	mai	numerical classifier for thin; flat objects.
二枚	nimai	two (sheets).
三つ	mittsu	three (things).
四さつ	shi-satsu (yonsatsu)	four (volumes)*
五	go (Chinese reading)	five.
五本	gohon	five (long, slender objects).
間	aida	space; interior (n.).
・・・と・・・の間に ある	....to....no aida ni aru	to be between.....and.....
まんねんひつ	mannenhitsu	fountain pen (n.).
が	ga	1. but; (and) yet; however; though; although

2. and; when; where.\*

...は...が ...は...	....wa....ga, ....wa.....	usual sentence pattern to express contrast or comparison.
みんな	minna	all.
銭	sen	sen (Japanese monetary unit, 1/100 of a yen.)
十	jū (Chinese reading)	ten
十銭	jissen	ten sen.*
いくさつ	ikusatsu	how many (volumes).
かぞえる (かぞえて)	kazoeru (kazoete)	to count; enumerate (v.t.) (semi- reg.). Bases: Imperfective.....kazoe-; Conjunctive.....kazoe-; Conclusive.....kazoeru; Attributive.....kazoeru-; Conditional.....kazoere-; Imperative.....kazoe. KAZOETE is the conjunctive form of the verb KAZOERU.
四つ	yottsu (Japanese reading)	four.
五つ	itsutsu (Japanese reading)	five.
六つ	muttsu (Japanese reading)	six.
七つ	nanatsu (Japanese reading)	seven.
八つ	yattsu (Japanese reading)	eight.
九つ	kokonotsu (Jap. reading)	nine.
十	tō (Japanese reading)	ten.
から	kara	from.
まで	made	as far as; until.

一度	ichido	one time; once.
もう一度	mō ichido	once more; another time.
下さいませんか	kudasaimasen ka	polite negative interrrogative form of "kudasai." "Won't you please,... for me." "Would you mind....ing this for me," etc.*
かしこまりました	kashikomarimashita	an expression which corresponds to: "Certainly, Sir", "With pleasure, Sir", etc., and used to express willing obedience.
次	tsugi	next; following; adjoining; second(n.).
いくつ	ikutsu	what number (n.). cf., "ikutsu" used as "how many" when there is no specific numerical classifier for the thing in question.
十一	jūichi	eleven.
下さい	kudasai	from "kudasaru" (v.t.) meaning "to give me", and may be translated as: "Please give me...." Not to be confused with "kudasai" used as an auxiliary verb following the conjunctive or -TE form of another verb, in which case the meaning is essentially: Please....for me (or to me.)
上げる	ageru	to give (to a superior 2nd or 3rd person); (v.t.) (semi-reg.) Bases: Imperfective.....age-; Conjunctive.....age-; Conclusive.....ageru; Attributive.....ageru-; Conditional.....agere-; Imperative.....age. "agete" is the conjunctive form.
上げましょうか	agemashō ka	shall I (we) give (you, him or them)? As in the case of "kudasai", "agemashō ka" and "agemashō" may be used both as an independent verb, and as an auxiliary verb following the conjunctive or -TE form of another verb.*

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 8 (Dai hakka)

#### HIDARI NO UE NO SUMI

. . . The English construction "the upper left-hand corner", should be changed to "left upper corner" in Japanese. That is "right" "left" is mentioned before "upper" or "lower."

#### MŌ HITOTSU

MŌ means "more" when it is followed by a compound numeral.

E.g., MŌ HITO-TSU KUDASAI "Please give me one more."

#### YON-SATSU and YO-MAI

For reasons of taboo, the Chinese numeral SHI (homophonous with "death") is frequently changed to the Japanese numeral YON or YO before a Chinese numerical classifier.

#### Conclusive Form + GA

GA is a conjunctive particle. Following the conclusive forms, it expresses opposition to the action stated by the verb: "but." The opposition may, however, be very weak, in which case "and" is a good translation.

E.g., HON WA ARIMASU GA, PEN WA ARIMASEN.  
"There is a book, but there is no pen."

#### JISSEN

When JŪ and SEN are compounded, the compounded numeral changes phonetically from JŪSEN to JISSEN.

#### -TE KUDASAI and -TE KUDASAIMASEN KA

-MASEN, the polite negative conjunctive base suffix, and KA, the interrogative particle, joined to the phrase -TE KUDASAI means "Won't you please, .....for me." The negative indicates a greater degree of humility than -TE KUDASAI.

#### ..... MASHŌ

-MASHŌ is the probable-future form of the polite suffix -MASU.



Lesson 8

Fill in the blank spaces.

第八課

一、つくえの上の本ペンかみあります。

二、本は左上すみあります。

三、きつてペンえまん中あります。

四、此のえ中きつて二箱三本四  
あります。

五、きつて一枚ありませんか。もう一度かぞえて

六、マッチのは短四角かいえ、長丸です。

七、二銭きつてを五三銭きつて十  
下さい。

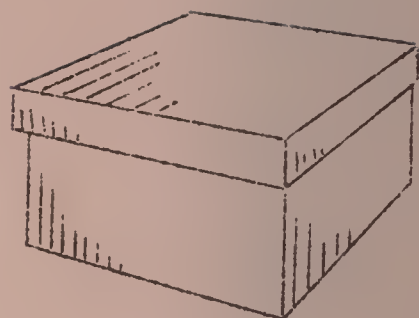
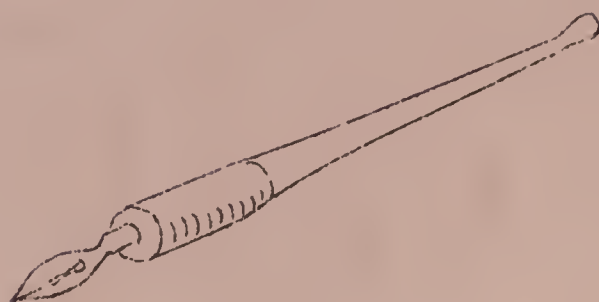
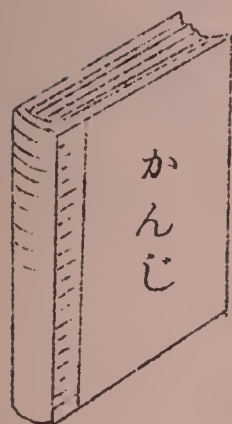
八、ペン本箱間あります。

九、十九銭次いくですか。銭です。

十、ペンを本上げまかい五下さい。

Lesson 8

Answer the following questions in Japanese:



一、此のえの中には何がありますか。

二、ペンは何と何の間にありますか。

三、かんじの本はどこにありますか。

四、何が右の上のすみにありますか。

五、ペンは三本ありますか。

六、テーブルはどこにありますか。

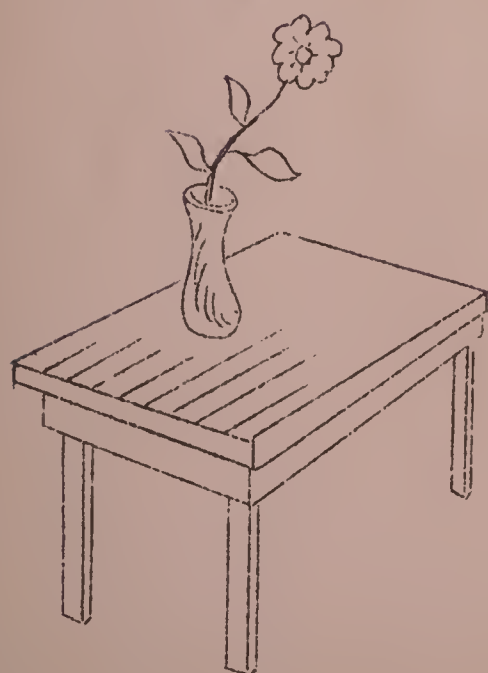
七、テーブルの足は何本みえますか。

八、一本の足はかくれて居ますか。

九、テーブルの上には

何がありますか。

十、此のえの中に花が  
何本ありますか。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 8

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Here are two more boxes. Are they yours?
2. The dictionaries and the pens are all on the table.
3. The Japanese book is between the English book and the dictionary.
4. How many pencils shall I give you? Please give me three (of them).
5. All the stamps are not blue. The four-sen stamp is green.
6. There are five pens in the upper right-hand corner of the picture.
7. How many books are there on the table? Please count them again.
8. How many pens shall I give you? Please give me two pens.
9. This pen is long, but that pen is short.
10. Please count from one to ten. What comes after ten? Eleven.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 9 (Dai ku ka)

舟	fune	boat (n.).
古い	furui	old (adj.).
近く	chikaku	vicinity; neighborhood (n.).*
人	hito	man; person (n.).
居る(居ます)	iru (imasu)	to be; to exist (v.i.).(semi-reg.). Used principally with animate subjects. <u>cf.</u> , "aru" (arimasu) which is used principally with inanimate subjects. "iru" or "imasu" is used also as an auxiliary verb (See page 15). Bases: Imperfective.....i-; Conjunctive.....i-; Conclusive.....iru; Attributive.....iru-; Conditional.....ire-; Imperative.....ire. The conjunctive form is "ite."
としより	toshiyori	aged (elderly) person (n.).
草	kusa	grass (n.).
だれ	dare	who (interrogative pronoun).
だれの	dare no	whose (possessive pronoun) See pages 3 and 11 for NO.*
うしろ	ushiro	the back; the rear (n.).
家	ie or (uchi)	house or (home) (n.).
けん	ken	numerical classifier for houses; buildings; stores.
何けん	nan-gen	how many (houses).*
一けん	ikken	one (house).
まど	mado	window (n.).
えんとつ	entotsu	chimney; funnel; smokestack (n.).



から	kara	from (particle indicating the point from which an action starts.)
けむり	kemuri	smoke (n.).
出る(出て)	deru (dete)	to come out (v.i.). (semi-reg.). Bases: Imperfective.....de-; Conjunctive.....de-; Conclusive.....deru; Attributive.....deru-; Conditional.....dere-; Imperative.....de. "dete" is the conjunctive form of the semi-regular verb "deru."
そば	soba	vicinity; neighborhood (n.).
そばに	soba ni	beside; by the side of.*
何本	nambon	how many (long, slender objects.)
うみ	u'mi	sea; ocean (n.).
を (page 49)	wo	particle which indicates the locale where a motion, locomotion or flight, etc., takes place.*
鳥	tori (Japanese reading)	bird (n.).
とぶ(とんで)	tobu (tonde)	to fly (v.i.). (reg.). Bases: Imperfective.....toba-; Conjunctive.....tobi-; Conclusive.....tobu; Attributive.....tobu-; Conditional.....tobe-; Imperative.....tobe. "tonde" is the conjunctive form of the regular verb "tobu."
何ば	namba	how many (birds).*
わ	wa	numerical classifier for birds.*

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 9 (Dai ku ka)

#### FUNE NO CHIKAKU NI

CHIKAKU is a noun which means "vicinity" or "neighborhood." It is one of the few adverbs which are used as a noun. The literal translation of FUNE NO CHIKAKU NI, therefore, is "in the vicinity of the boat." However, for all practical purposes, it can be translated "near the boat."

CHIKAI (近い) is an adjective which means "near" or "close (by)."

#### NO

NO is a possessive particle and it means "of " or "'s."

E.g., DARE NO FUNE "Whose boat."

#### KEN

KEN is a numerical classifier for houses, buildings and stores. When KEN is preceded by NAN to form a compounded numeral, KEN is changed phonetically to GEN: NANGEN.

#### NO USHIRO NI

NO, a possessive particle, always follows a noun or pronoun, and NI, which comes after the noun of place or position is subject to change according to the nature of the verb which follows it. E.g.,

<u>Subject</u>	<u>Place or Complement</u>	<u>Object</u>	<u>Verb</u>
1.....	Verbs of existence		
HON GA	TSUKUE <u>NO</u> UE <u>NI</u>		ARIMASU (Inanimate)
HITO GA	KUSA <u>NO</u> UE <u>NI</u>		IMASU (Animate)
2.....	Verbs of action		
TARŌ GA	UCHI <u>NO</u> SOBA <u>DE</u>	HANA WO	MITE IMASU
GAKUSEI GA	GAKKŌ <u>NO</u> CHIKAKU <u>DE</u>	E WO	KAITE IMASU
3.....	Verbs of motion		
TORI GA	HANA <u>NO</u> UE <u>WO</u>		TONDE IMASU
ANATA WA	KUSA <u>NO</u> UE <u>WO</u>		ARUITE IMASU
4.....	Verbs of identification or description		
KORE WA	IE <u>NO</u> HAKA <u>DE</u>		ARIMASU
HON WA	PEN <u>NO</u> TSUGI <u>NI</u>		ARIMASU

### Numerical Classifier WA and BA

WA is the numerical classifier for birds. However, the compound numerals for birds undergo the phonetic changes as follows:

ICHI-WA, NI-WA, SAN-BA, SHI-WA, GO-WA,  
ROKU-WA or ROPPA, SHICHI-WA, HACHI-WA,  
KU-WA, JIPPA, and NAN-BA or NAMBA

Lesson 9

Fill in the blank spaces.



- |      |       |     |       |       |      |     |      |
|------|-------|-----|-------|-------|------|-----|------|
| 一、此  | え     | 左   | 上     | すみ    | 家    | が   | 何    |
| あります | か。    |     |       |       |      |     |      |
| 二、小  | 家     | 一けん |       | あり    | ません。 |     |      |
| 三、家  | そば    |     | 木     | が     | 何    |     | あります |
| 二    | あります。 |     |       |       |      |     | か。   |
| 四、まど | いくつ   | 見   |       | か。    | 五つ   |     | 。    |
| 五、戸  | 見     |     | か。    | はい、戸  | 一    | 見   |      |
| 六、四角 | えんとつ  | 黒   | けむり   | 出     |      | 居   |      |
| ます。  |       |     |       |       |      |     |      |
| 七、えの | 右     | うみ  | 上     | 鳥     | 三    | とんで |      |
|      |       |     |       |       |      |     |      |
| 八、家の | 近     | 人   | が     | せん。   |      |     |      |
| 九、家  | うしろ   | うみ  |       | あります。 |      |     |      |
| 十、木  | 家     | 右   | あります。 |       |      |     |      |



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 9

Translate the following into Japanese.

1. The elderly person is not in the old boat. He is sitting on the grass.
2. There are three birds in the picture, but only one house.
3. Who is counting the trees? I am. How many are there?
4. The birds are not flying over the house; they are flying over the boat.
5. Does this house have four windows? No, it has only three.
6. How many trees are there beside the house?
7. What is coming out of the chimney? Smoke is coming out.
8. Is there a house near the sea? Yes. Whose house is it?
9. Is the left (part) of the picture the ocean? Yes.
10. The old man is walking on the grass.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 10 (Dai jikka)

八	hachi (Chinese reading)	eight.
七	shichi (Chinese reading)	seven.
より	yorī	than (particle indicating the standard of a comparative statement; it is placed after the word less preferred by the predicate.*
( 九	ku (kyū) (Chinese reading)	nine.
....と....で ....になる(な ります)	....to....de.... ni naru(narimasu)	usual sentence pattern in addition to express: ".....and.....make.....;" ".....and.....are....."*
になる(なり ます)	ni naru(narimasu)	to become (copula) (v.i.)* Bases: Imperfective.....nara-; Conjunctive.....nari-; Conclusive.....naru; Attributive.....naru-; Conditional.....nare-; Imperative.....nare. Conjunctive form: natte.
六	roku (Chinese reading)	six.
十二	jūni (Chinese reading)	twelve
半分	hambun	half
三分の一	sambun no ichi	one-third ("one of three parts").
四分の一	shibun no ichi	one-fourth ("one of four parts").
倍	bai	multiple; time; fold; double.
二倍	nibai	two times; double.
十四	jūshi (Chinese reading)	fourteen.
分	bun	part; portion (n.).

三倍	sambai	three times; triple.
十五	jūgo (Chinese reading)	fifteen.
引く	hiku	to draw; pull; subtract (v.t.). Bases: Imperfective.....hika-; Conjunctive.....hiki-; Conclusive.....hiku; Attributive.....hiku-; Conditional.....hike-; Imperative.....hike. Conjunctive form: hiite.
と.(Page 51)	to	particle which, following the conclusive forms, indicates a condition: "if," "when."*
のこる(のこります)	nokoru (nokorimasu)	to remain; stay (behind); be left over (v.i.). Bases: Imperfective.....nokora-; Conjunctive.....nokori-; Conclusive.....nokoru; Attributive.....nokoru; Conditional.....nokore-; Imperative.....nokore. Conjunctive form: nokotte.
十一	jūichi (Chinese reading)	eleven.
に	ni	to (particle denoting the indirect object.)
たす	tasu	to add (v.t.). Bases: Imperfective.....tasa-; Conjunctive.....tashi-; Conclusive.....tasu; Attributive.....tasu-; Conditional.....tase-; Imperative.....tase.
十倍	jūbai	ten times; ten fold.
百	hyaku (ヒヤク) (Chinese reading)	hundred.

千	sen (Chinese reading)	thousand.
一万	ichi man (Chinese reading)	ten thousand.
十	jūman	100,000
十三	jūsan (Chinese reading)	thirteen
三十	sanjū (Chinese reading)	thirty
...と...では どつちが.....	....to....dewa dōtchi ga.....	usual pattern used in comparing two things: "of A and B, which is...."
どつち	dōtchi	which (of two things). (corruption of Dochira)
方	hō	direction; region; side; part (n.).
四十	shijū* (yonjū) *(Chinese reading)	forty
どれ	dōre	which (of three or more things.) (cf., "Dōtchi" used for two things; and "dare" used for people.)
一ばん	ichiban	No. 1; first; most. (placed in front of adjectives or adverbs to indicate the superlative degree.)
一ばん大きい	ichiban ōkii	largest.



## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 10 (Dai jikka)

#### Comparison

Adjectives and adverbs in Japanese are without the comparative and superlative forms. Comparisons are expressed by using words or phrases with special meanings.

#### YORI and NO HŌ

YORI means "than" and is placed after the second member of the comparison, that is to say, the member that is less preferred by the predicate.

E.g., KONO PEN WA ANO PEN YORI NAGAI NI DESU.  
"This pen is longer than that pen (one)."

NO HŌ is often used after one or both members of a comparison if the members are nouns, pronouns, or noun equivalents. (See page 8 for quasi-adjectives.)

E.g., KONO PEN NO HŌ GA ANO PEN (NO HŌ) YORI NAGAI NI DESU.  
"This pen is longer than that pen (one)."  
(Note that the postposition GA is used instead of WA.)

However, when the members compared are verbs or adjectives, the particle NO is dropped in the phrase NO HŌ.

E.g., TATTE-IRU (HŌ) YORI KOSHIKAKETE-IRU HŌ GA II NI DESU. or  
KOSHIKAKETE-IRU HŌ GA TATTE-IRU (HŌ) YORI II NI DESU.  
"It is better (lit. "good") to sit down than to stand up."  
NAGAI HO GA II NI DESU. "The longer one is better."

(Note that the meaning is the same when the order of the phrases is inverted and that one member of the comparison can be omitted.)

#### Superlative

The superlative degree is indicated by placing the word ICHIBAN, "No. 1," or MOTTOMO, "most," immediately in front of the predicate adjective or verb.

E.g., KONO PEN GA ICHIBAN NAGAI NI DESU.  
"This pen is the longest."

JU KARA SAN WO MIKU TO, SHICHI GA NOKORI MASU

Following the conclusive base, TO expresses a condition: "if," "when."

TO is always joined to the conclusive base (conclusive forms) even if the principal verb in the sentence is in the past tense.

E.g., KORE WO MIKU TO, NIBAL NI NARI-MASHITA. (past tense)  
"When I added this, it doubled."

-NI NARIMASU

NARIMASU, the polite form of IRU, "to become," is construed with the particle NI, which is placed after a noun, pronoun, or a noun equivalent. However, after the conjunctive (adverbial) stem of true adjectives -NI is omitted.

E.g., ANO HITO NI IMA TOSHIYORI NI NATTE IMASU.  
"He (that man) is now an old man."

KONO HON WA FURUKU\* NARI-MASHITA.  
"This book is old now (has become old.)"

\*FURUKU is the conjunctive (-adverbial) stem of the true adjective, FURUI.

Lesson 10

Fill in the blank spaces.

第十課

十二、	十一、十六	十、千の十倍は	九、四	八、十六	七、五の	六、八の	五、十二の	四、五	三、七	二、三と四	一、九は十五
が	二十三	は	三	八	は	は	は	二十の	六	いくつ	小さい
小さい	六十では	です。	と、七に	八	は二十	は二十四	は四	です。	十三に	ますか。	。
。	一ばん大きい		なります。	、八がのこります。	か。	。	。		。		

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 10

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. The blue table is larger than the white box.
2. Is this book smaller than the dictionary? Yes, it is.
3. If seven is subtracted from twenty, thirteen remains.
4. Four and five make nine. Five and three make eight.
5. Eight is one-half of sixteen. One-half of sixteen is eight.
6. If you add 40 to 60, you get 100.
7. Which is larger, 15 or 50? 50 is larger.
8. What is three times nine? Three times nine is twenty-seven.
9. If you add 123,456 to 654,321, what do you get?
10. This is the oldest boat and that is the smallest chair.



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 11 (Dai jūikka)

へや	heya	room (n.).
知る	shiru	to know; become aware of (v.t.). (reg. verb.) Bases: Imperfective.....shira-; Conjunctive.....shiri-; Conclusive.....shiru; Attributive.....shiru-; Conditional.....shire-; Imperative.....shire. Assimilated conj. form..... shitte.
知りません	shirimasen	I do (one does, etc.) not know. "I know" is "shitte inasu."*
あけてごらん なさい	akete goran nasai	open (it) and see (how it is or what the result will be.)*
紙	kami	paper (n.).
紫	murasaki	purple; violet color (n.).
がま口	gamaguchi	coin purse (n.).
お金	okane	money (n.).
五十銭	gojissen	fifty sen.
ぎんか	ginka	silver coin; silver piece (n.).
円	en	yen (monetary unit).
五円	goen	five yen
さつ	satsu	paper money (n.).
五円さつ	goen satsu	five-yen bill.
何倍	nambai	how many times.
何も	nanimo	nothing (with negative predicate).*
門	mon	gate (n.).
外	soto	outside (n.).

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 11 (Dai jūikka)

#### SHITTE-IRU and SHIRI-MASEN

The verb "to know" in the present tense is always in the progressive or persisting form (See GRAMMATICAL NOTES, Lesson 4, page 17), i.e., SHITTE IMASU or SHITTE IRU.

The negative of SHITTE IMASU or SHITTE IRU is preferably kept in the simple form, i.e., SHIRI-MASEN.

E.g., ANATA WA KONO JE WO SHITTE IMASU KA.

"Do you know this character?"

IEE, SHIRI-MASEN. "No, (I) do not know (it)."

#### AKETE GORAN-NASAI

GORAN-NASAI is the honorific form of MI-NASAI. (See GRAMMATICAL NOTES, Lesson 7.) -NASAI is the polite imperative suffix joined to the conjunctive base of verbs, or to the Chinese verbs read in Chinese. -GORAN or -MIRU joined to the conjunctive or TE- form is a tentative auxiliary suffix which denotes trial or attempt.

#### NANI-MO -.... NAI (or -MASEN)

The many interrogative pronouns can be converted into the corresponding "inclusive" pronouns by the inclusive particle -MO followed by negative verbs, adjectives or quasi-adjectives.

E.g., Interrogative	Inclusive
<u>Pronouns</u>	<u>Pronouns</u>
NANI	NANI-MO (nothing)*
DARE	DARE-MO (nobody)*

\*With negative verb, adjective, or quasi-adjective translated positively.

TSUKUE NO UE NIWA NANI-MO ARIMASEN.

"Nothing is on the desk."

KOKO NIWA DARE-MO IMASEN.

"Nobody is here."

Lesson 11

Fill in the blank spaces.

第十一課

- 一、大きい 箱      テーブル      上      。
- 二、箱      中      何      あります か。知      。
- 三、私      が      口      中      お金      十円      。
- 四、小      箱      に紙      案      えんぴつ      が      。
- 五、門      は      家      中      あります か。
- 六、五円      五十銭      が      あります。
- 七、此の      へや      中      の      なた      私      居ます。
- 八、門      は      家      の      あります。
- 九、門      そば      だれ      居ません。
- 十、外      門      しめて      家      の      まど      あけて      。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 11

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. There is a large box on the table. Open it and see. What in it? Nothing (is in it).
2. Who is sitting outside the house? No one (is).
3. Five from seven leaves two, but five from five leaves nothing.
4. Just see if you can stand on the small chair.
5. Who is standing in the room? I don't know.
6. Is the box under the table, on the table, or at the right of the table?
7. Can you see the gate now? Yes, I can.
8. Who owns that large white house? (Or whose is that large white house?) It belongs to that man.
9. Nobody is walking now. Nothing is visible.
10. Are doors inside the house or outside?



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 12 (Dai jūni ka)

停車場	teishajō; teishaba	railway station (n.).
名前	namae	name (n.).
と	to	thus; that (particle which indicates what is said, thought, etc.)*
言う(言います)	iu (yū) (iimasu)	to say; tell (v.t.) Bases: (reg. v.). Imperfective.....iwa-; Conjunctive.....ii-; Conclusive.....iu(yū); Attributive.....iu- (yū-); Conditional.....ie-; Imperative.....ie. Assimilated conjunctive form.....itte.
いみ	imi	meaning (n.).
と ゆう	to iu (yū)	explanatory phrase.*
汽車	kisha	(Steam) train (n.).
とまる(とまつ て)	tomaru (tomatte)	to come to a stop (v.i.)* Bases: (reg. v.). Imperfective.....tomara-; Conjunctive.....tomari-; Conclusive.....tomaru; Attributive.....tomaru-; Conditional.....tomare-; Imperative.....tomare. Assimilated conjunctive form....tomatte.
四五人の人	shigo-nin no hito	several people; four or five people.*
来る(来ます)	kuru (kimasu)	to come (v.i.) (irregular) Bases: Imperfective.....ko-; Conjunctive.....ki-; Conclusive.....kuru; Attributive.....kuru-; Conditional.....kure-; Imperative.....koi. Conjunctive form: kite.

出る(出て)	deru (dete)	to come out (v.i.) (semi-reg.). Conjunctive form: dete.
出て来る (出て来ます)	dete kuru (dete kimasu)	to come out (v.i.).
ひろい	hiroi	wide; spacious; extensive (adj.).
みち	michi	road; street (n.).
じどうしゃ	jidōsha	automobile (n.).
台	dai	numerical classifier for vehicles, machinery, etc.
じてんしゃ	jitensha	bicycle (n.).
走る(走つて)	hashiru (hashitte)	to run; sail (v.i.). Bases: (reg verb) Imperfective.....hashira-; Conjunctive.....hashiri-; Conclusive.....hashiru; Attributive.....hashiru-; Conditional.....hashire-; Imperative.....hashire. Assimilated conjunctive form: hashitte.
みちばた	michibata	roadside (n.).
何げんも	nan-gen mo	any number of; many (buildings).
英語で	Eigo de	in English.*
何と言いますか	nan to iimasu ka	Lit: "what do they call (it)?"
ブラウン	Buraun	Brown.
ちや色	cha-iro	brown; light brown (n.).

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 12 (Dai jūni ka)

.....WO.....TO II-MASU

For the construction "to call (A) (B)", the form "(A)-WO (B) TO II-MASU" is employed.

E.g., KORE WO HON TO II-MASU.  
"(They) call this a book."

However, the translation becomes somewhat awkward when the word NAMAЕ, "name," is introduced.

KONO TEISHABA NO NAMAЕ WO\* "Green Hill" TO II-MASU.

"The name of this station is "Green Hill."

(More literally, "They render the name of this station as  
'Green Hill.'")

\*The particle WA is sometimes used to set off the first phrase, in which case it replaces WO.

.....TO IU

The idiomatic phrase .....TO IU placed before a noun, pronoun, or noun equivalents, for all practical purposes, may be called an explanatory phrase, because it is placed after the word, phrase, or clause which is to be explained.

SORE WA MIDORI NO OKA TO IU IMI DESU.

"It is the meaning that (they) call  
'green hill.'"

"It has the meaning of 'green hill.'"

"It means 'green hill.'"

Note that IMI (meaning) is modified by the preceding clause MIDORI NO OKA TO IU.

Note also that IU is the attributive stem. One function of the attributive stem is that it may be used attributively in front of a noun to modify that noun. In this case the English translation often is in the nature of a relative clause.

TEISHABA NI KISHA GA TOMATTE IMASU

TEISHABA NI KISHA GA TOMATTE IMASU means "The train is (stopping) at the railway station." TOMATTE IMASU, in this context, however, does not mean "is coming to a stop." TOMATTE-IMASU, therefore, describes the persisting state. (See page 17.)

SHI-GO NIN-NO HITO

SHI-GO NIN NO HITO means "four or five people." Note that the numbers are consecutive and in an ascending order. Following the same principle, "twelve or thirteen" is expressed by placing JŪ before NI-SAN; "fifty or sixty" by placing GO-ROKU in front of JŪ; and "three or four hundred" by prefixing SAN-SHI to HYAKU.

E.g., GO-ROKU NIN "five or six people."  
JŪ-NI-SAN NIN "twelve or thirteen people."  
SHICHI-HACHI-JŪ NIN "70 or 80 people."  
ROKU-SHICHI HYAKU NIN "six or seven hundred people."

NAN GEN MO ARIMASU KA

NAN-GEN MO means "any number of (houses) and, therefore, may be translated "many (houses)." MO can be joined to the interrogative form of any compound numeral.

E.g., NAN-SATSU-MO "any number of (books)." "many (books)."

EIGO DE

EIGO DE means "in English." DE is an instrumental particle, and in this case it is translated "in."



Fill in the blank spaces.

第十二課

一、此の 停車場 名前 せんだい 言います。

二、汽車 まで 人が外 見 居ます。

三、四五人 人 へや 出て 來ます。

四、じどうしゃ 一 と、じてんしゃ 二 走つて 居ます。

五、みちばた 家 一 しか 。

六、「ブック」と のは 日本語 何と 言いますか。

七、「デスク」と のは 日本語 何と ゆう ですか。

八、家 うしろ は ひろい です。

九、停車場 うしろ ひくい おか です。

十、私 の 家 うしろ ひろい うみ です。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 12

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. That elderly person's name is Mr. Brown.
2. What is the name of this flower? It is called a cherry blossom.
3. Is "table" English or Japanese? It is English.
4. Only one automobile is behind the old house.
5. What is your name? My name is Aoki. What does it mean? It means a green tree.
6. Who is coming out of the house? I don't know.
7. Several (three or four) persons are running on the grass.
8. Three brown automobiles are running on the road.
9. Are there many birds flying over the house? No, there is only one.
10. A man is coming out of the station. His name is Smith.

## VOCABULARY

Lesson 13 (Dai jūsan ka)

男	otoko	man; male sex; fellow (n.).
子	ko	child (n.).
男の子	otoko-no-ko	boy (n.).*
する (して)	suru (shite)	to do (v.t.) ( <u>irreg.</u> verb).
	Bases:	
	Imperfective.....shi-	
	sa-	
	se-	
	Conjunctive.....shi-	
	Conclusive.....suru;	
	Attributive.....suru-	
	Conditional.....sure-	
	Imperative.....shi(ro);	
	se(yo).	
	Conjunctive form: shite.	
よむ(よんで)	yomu (yonde)	to read (v.t.) (reg.v.).
	Bases:	
	Imperfective.....yoma-	
	Conjunctive.....yomi-	
	Conclusive.....yomu;	
	Attributive.....yomu-	
	Conditional.....yome-	
	Imperative.....yome.	
	Assimilated conj. form: yonde.	
女	on-na	woman; female sex (n.).
女の子	onna-no-ko	girl (n.).*
字	ji	characters (Japanese and Chinese written symbols); letters (n.).
書く(書いて)	kaku (kaite)	to write (v.t.) (reg. v.).
	Bases:	
	Imperfective.....kaka-	
	Conjunctive.....kaki-	
	Conclusive.....kaku;	
	Attributive.....kaku-	
	Conditional.....kake-	
	Imperative.....kake;	
	Assimilated conj. form: kaite.	

犬	inu	dog (n.).
水	mizu	water (n.).
のむ(のんで)	nomu (nonde)	to drink; swallow (v.t.). (reg. v.). Bases: Imperfective.....noma-; Conjunctive.....nomi-; Conclusive.....nomu; Attributive.....nomu-; Conditional.....nome-; Imperative.....nome; Assimilated conj. form: nonde.
ねこ (猫)	neko	cat (n.).
も	mo	also; too (particle).*
魚	sakana	fish (n.).
食べる(食べて)	taberu (tabete)	to eat (v.t.) (semi-reg. v.). Conjunctive form: tabete.
おじいさん	ojiisan	old man; grandfather (n.).
休む(休んで)	yasumu (yasunde)	to rest (v.t.); to absent oneself from school or work (v.t.). (reg. v.). Assimilated conjunctive form: yasunde.
手	te	hand (n.).
もつ(もつて)	motsu (motte)	to hold; have (v.t.). (reg. v.). Assimilated conjunctive form: motte.
きせる	kiseru	(Japanese) pipe (n.).
たばこ	tabako	tobacco (n.).
たばこをのむ	tabako wo nomu	to smoke (tobacco). (lit: "to drink tobacco.")
おばあさん	obāsan	old woman; grandmother (n.).
はたらく (はたらいて)	hataraku (hataraitte)	to work (v.t.). (reg. v.) Assimilated conj. form: hataraitte.
せんたく	sentaku	laundry; washing (clothes) (n.).
せんたく(を)する	sentaku (wo) suru	to wash clothes; launder.*



習う(ならつて)	narau (naratte)	to learn; practice (v.t.) (reg. v.). Bases: Imperfective.....narawa-; Conjunctive.....narai-; Conclusive.....narau; Attributive.....narau-; Conditional.....narae-; Imperative.....narae. Assimilated conj. form: naratte.
ならつちや居ま せん	naratcha imasen	Contracted form of "naratte wa imasen." "(one) is not learning (it)." <u>cf.</u> , NONJA IMASEN.*
おしえる(おしえて)	oshieru (oshiete)	to teach (v.t.) (semi-reg.). Bases: Imperfective.....oshie-; Conjunctive.....oshie-; Conclusive.....oshieru; Attributive.....oshieru-; Conditional.....oshie-; Imperative.....oshie. Conj. form: oshiete. <u>cf.</u> , MIERU "can see," (v.i.).
先生	sensei	teacher; instructor; master (n.). (honorific address for teachers, professors, doctors (M.D.) and for those in a position to give counsel)*
生徒	seito	student; pupil (n.).*
.....も.....	(Conj. form) - +mo.....	"heaven if"; "although" (particle).*
いい	ii	good; proper (adj.).
書いてもいいゝん ですか	kaite mo ii n'desuka	"May I write?" "Is it all right to write it?"
.....は.....	(Conj. form)- wa.....	"if" (particle).*
書いてはいけ ません	kaite wa ike- masen	"May not (write)." "(one) must or should not.*"
あとで	ato de	later (on); afterwards; after awhile.*

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 13 (Dai jūsan ka)

#### OTOKO-NO-KO and ONNA-NO-KO

OTOKO NO KO, "boy," and ONNA NO KO, "girl," literally mean "male child" and "female child," respectively. Similar constructions can be used to express "man" and "woman"; i.e., OTOKO NO HITO and ONNA NO HITO.

#### NEKO NO MIZU WO NONDE IMASU

MO is an inclusive particle used after the subject in place of GA or WA (the separative or exclusive particle).

MO is used to single out an additional item that is similar in purport to something already stated and it may be translated as "also," "too," "even," or "as well."

#### NONJA-IMASEN and NARATCHA-IMASEN

NONJA IMASEN and NARATCHA IMASEN are the corrupt forms of NONDE WA IMASEN and NARATTE WA IMASEN, respectively. WA is placed between the conjunctive form of the verbs and IMASEN to emphasize the negative idea. E.g.,

<u>Affirmative</u>	<u>Negative</u>	<u>Corrupt forms</u>
NONDE IMASU	NONDE WA IMASEN	NONJA IMASEN
YONDE IMASU	YONDE WA IMASEN	YONJA IMASEN
ARUITE IMASU	ARUITE WA IMASEN	ARUICHA IMASEN
KAITE IMASU	KAITE WA IMASEN	KAITCHA IMASEN
NARATTE IMASU	NARATTE WA IMASEN	NARATCHA IMASEN

#### SENTAKU WO SURU and SENTAKU SURU

SENTAKU, "laundry," is a noun, and SURU, "to do," is a transitive verb; therefore, the objective particle WO is inserted between SENTAKU and SURU. For this reason SENTAKU WO SURU, actually, means "to do the laundry." Frequently, however, the objective particle WO is dropped and the phrase is reduced to SENTAKU SURU.

Such words as SENTAKU, SAMPO, "stroll," and BENKYŌ, "study," are Chinese compounds with the Chinese pronunciation and are treated as nouns. All exotic words are treated as nouns in Japanese, and they are rendered into verbs by affixing -WO-SURU or -SURU, and rendered into adjectives by suffixing the particle NO or NA (quasi-adjectives).

E.g., The English verb "to dance" is rendered DANSU (WO) SURU, the English adjective "romantic" is rendered ROMANTIKKU NA.

In constructions such as KIMONO WO SENTAKU-SURU, "to wash clothes," the particle WO between SENTAKU and SURU must be dropped. NIHONGO WO BENKYŌ SURU and KOKO WO SAMPO SURU are similar instances.

## KAITE MO IIN' DESU KA

Following the conjunctive form (TE form) of the verb or adjective, MO expresses the concessive mood "even if," "although."

E.g., KAITE MO "even if one writes."  
KUROKUTE MO "even if it is black."

When the conjunctive form is followed by MO II (N' DESU), it denotes permission. KAITE MO IIN'DESU, therefore, means "one may write" (lit., "it is all right even if one writes.>").

## KAITE WA IKEMASEN

Following the conjunctive form (TE form) of the verb or adjective, WA expresses a weak conditional idea and it can be translated "if...." The succeeding phrase expresses a reaction to the condition. E.g.,

KAITE WA IKEMASEN Lit., "if one writes, it will not do,"  
or "it will not do if one writes."  
Free., "one should not write," or "one must not write."

OKIKUTE WA IKEMASEN Free., "it should not be big," or  
"it must not be big."

Note also that WA is followed by the negative idea.  
KAITE MO II(N') DESU means "(you) may write."

## (-NO) ATO DE

NO plus a noun indicating time or place plus DE forms a compound particle and denotes the sense of action "at." E.g.,

KONO ATO DE KAITE KUDASAI "Please write (it) after this."

Frequently -NO is understood. E.g.,

ATO DE KAITE KUDASAI "Please write (it) later,"

(See GRAMMATICAL NOTES, Lesson 9, page 46.)

## SENSEI and SEITO

SENSEI, "teacher," is also used in addressing or referring to masters in a profession or an art, older men of culture or learning whom one wishes to treat with regard.

SEITO means "student," but students enrolled in regular courses in universities or equivalents are called GAKUSEI.



Answer the following questions in Japanese:

- 一、あなたは 今 何を ならつて 居ます か。
- 二、あなたは 今 本 を よんで 居ます か。
- 三、あなたは 今 英語 を ならつて 居ます か。
- 四、だれ が 日本語 を おしえて 居ます か。
- 五、あなたの 先生 は だれ ですか。
- 六、第十三課 の え を ごらん なさい。だれ が せんとく を して 居ます か。
- 七、生徒 は 今 日本語 を ならつて 居ます か。
- 八、何 が さかな を たべて 居ます か。
- 九、此の おじいさんは 何を して 居ます か。
- 十、その 女 の 子 は 何を して 居ます か。
- 十一、ペドロさんは 日本語 を 習つて 居ます か。
- 十二、あなたは 今 日本語 を ならつて 居ます か。
- 十三、だれ が 此の へや に 居ます か。
- 十四、今 休んでも いゝん ですか。
- 十五、あなたは 手 に 何を 持つて 居ます か。
- 十六、先生 は 今 たばこ を のんで 居ます か。
- 十七、あなたは 今 何 に こしかけて 居ます か。
- 十八、あなたは かんじ を いくつ 知つて 居ます か。
- 十九、あなたの おくさんは 今 何を して 居ます か。
- 二十、あなた には 男 の 子 が いく人 ありますか。



Change the following into the present progressive form:

- 一、あの人は戸をしめます。
- 二、私は歩きます。
- 三、あなたは立ちます。
- 四、私はいすにこしかけます。
- 五、あなたも箱をとりますか。
- 六、青木さんは本を見ます。
- 七、私は本をつくえの上におきます。
- 八、私は一つから十までかぞえます。
- 九、あなたは日本語を習います。
- 十、先生はかんじをおしえます。
- 十一、あなたは今何を聞きますか。
- 十二、けむりがえんとつから出ます。
- 十三、私は本をとじます。
- 十四、あなたは字を書きます。
- 十五、鳥が木の上をとびます。
- 十六、ねこが水をのみます。
- 十七、じどうしやが走ります。
- 十八、としよりがたばこをのみます。
- 十九、汽車が停車場にとまります。
- 二十、あなたは今何をしますか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 13

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. The boy is reading a Japanese book under a tall tree, but the big girl is putting English books on the desk.
2. The old woman is not looking at the train. She is looking at an automobile.
3. What is the cat doing? It is eating fish. Whose cat is it? It is mine.
4. May I write some in English, too? No, you may not. Please write it all in Japanese.
5. Don't smoke in this room. Please smoke outside.
6. Aren't you working now? No, I am resting.
7. Please don't open the large box. That belongs to the teacher.
8. Are you learning Japanese, too? Yes. Whose student are you? I am Mr. Munakata's student.
9. What do you have in your hand? I have a pen and a dictionary.
10. The boy is writing characters with an old pen. What is the girl doing?

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 14 (Dai jūshi ka)

道	michi	road; street; way, path (n.).
いくたり	iku-tari	how many people.
たり	tari	numerical classifier for people.*
一人	hitori	one person.
二人	futari	two people
三人	san-nin	three people.
四人	yottari, (yo-nin)	four people.
五人	go-nin	five people.
達	tachi	personal plural suffix. Joined to personal pronouns or nouns indicating people. Less polite than -GATA.
人達	hito tachi	people (n.).
皆	minna, (mina)	all (n.).
歩いて居るの	aruite iru no	"the one (who is) walking." *
誰	dare	who (interrogative personal pronoun).
山本	Yamamoto	Proper noun (surname).
さん	san	corrupt form of the more formal honorific, "Sama," meaning "Mr.," "Mrs.," "Miss," or "Master," etc. may be suffixed to the given name as well as the surname.
家族	kazoku	family (n.). members of a family.
奥さん	okusan	wife; a polite form used in referring to the wife of a person of equal or higher social status, and never in referring to one's own wife.
子供	kodomo	children (child) (N.).

つれる(つれて)	tsureru (tsurete)	to take along (people or animal) (v.t.). (semi-reg. verb.)
散歩する	sampo suru	to take a walk. (See Lesson 13 for the verb SURU.)
どちら	dochira	which (of two things). <u>cf.</u> , "dotch," Lesson 10.
どちらも	dochira mo	both; either; neither (when followed by negative predicate).
二三本	nisambon	two or three (long slender objects). (See Les. 12 for SHIGO-NIN.)
松	matsu	pine; pine-tree (n.).
向う	mukō	yonder; over there; the other side (n.).
自動車	jidōsha	automobile (n.).
のる(のつて)	noru (notte)	to ride (v.i.). The postposition <u>"ni"</u> is <u>always</u> used to indicate the vehicle or thing on or in which one rides, mounts or sits.
町	machi	town; city; street (n.).
たくさん	takusan	great quantity; many; much (adv.).
可なり	kanari	fairly; pretty; considerably (adv.).
港	minato	port; harbor (n.).
船	fune	ship; boat (n.).
きかん車	kikansha	locomotive (n.).
早く	hayaku	quickly; rapidly; fast (adv. stem of HAYAI) (quick, rapid, fast).
こと	koto	fact (nominalizer). Frequently used to form a noun out of verbs (infinitive) and adjectives.*
走ること	hashiru koto	to run (infinitive); running (gerund).
出来る(出来ます)	dekiru (dekinasu)	to be possible (v.i.) (semi-reg.verb).
走ることが 出来る	hashiru koto ga dekiru	to be able to run. Lit: "running is possible."*



自轉車	jitensha	bicycle (n.).
くらい	gurai	as.....as.*
ほど	hodo	so.....as; about as....as; about.*

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 14

#### -TARI, or -NIN, the numerical classifier for people

The compound numerals for people are very irregular. -TARI, the Japanese form for "people," and -NIN, the Chinese form for "people," are used in the manner shown below. The Japanese numeral SHI, for reasons of taboo, is used not in conjunction with the Chinese numerical classifier.

E.g.,	1. hitori, (ICHI-NIN)	6. ROKU-NIN
	2. futari, (NI-NIN)	7. SHICHI-NIN
	3. SAN-NIN	8. HACHI-NIN
	4. yottari, (yo-NIN)	9. KU-NIN, (KYŪ-NIN)
	5. GO-NIN	10. JŪ-NIN.

The compound numerals above ten are all read in Chinese except for those in which the numeral four immediately precedes -NIN,

E.g., JŪ-yo-NIN, NI-JŪ-yo-NIN, SAN-JŪ-yo-NIN, etc.

The interrogative form of the compound numeral also varies.

E.g., iku-tari or iku-NIN or nan-NIN.

#### ARUITE IRU NO WA DARE DESU KA

The possessive particle NO in the above sentence is equivalent to the pronoun meaning "one," or "those," and the sentence preceding it constitutes a relative clause. No relative pronoun is used or required in Japanese to introduce a relative clause; therefore, a sentence or even a predicate verb or adjective placed in front of a noun or a pronoun constitutes a relative clause. Of course, when there is only one verb or verbs before a noun or a pronoun, the subject must be understood to constitute a clause.

E.g., ARUITE IRU NO WA ANATA DESU "The one who is walking is you."

ARUKU TOKI "(at the) time when (one) walks."

YASUMU TOKORO "The place where (one) rests."

Such words as NO, TOKI, TOKORO, MONO and KOTO are known as nominalizers, because they either follow inflected forms and change them into the corresponding nouns or come at the end of a clause and are translated as adverbs and conjunctions.

NO with nominalizing force is used not only after verbs, but after adjectives and quasi-adjectives. The antecedent forms (clauses) may be in the present or past tenses, simple or progressive or perfective, positive or negative.

E.g., HON WO YONDE IRU NO WA AOKI SAN DESU.  
"The one who is reading a book is Mr. Aoki."

SHIROI NO WA ANATA NO DESU.  
"The one which is white is yours."  
Free: "The white one is yours."

ANO KIREI NA NO WO KUDASAI.  
"Please give me that pretty one."

#### -KOTO GA DEKIRU

-KOTO GA DEKIRU (polite: -KOTO GA DEKIMASU) is joined to the conclusive-attributive base of verbs of action or motion to express the ability, i.e., "can," or "to be able to....."

As for intransitive verbs, those verbs that express natural process, such as "to sprout," "to rain or snow" cannot be put into the potential form; but those that express action or state implying potentiality or permission such as "can stop," "can stay," "can sleep," "can rest" are construed with -KOTO GA DEKIRU.

However, verbs that can be translated into English in the potential form, such as WAKARU, "to understand," "can understand," "understandable"; MIERU, "to see," "can see," "to be able to see; "to be visible"; KIKOERU, "to hear," "can hear," "to be audible"; cannot be followed by -KOTO GA DEKIRU.

E.g.,

1. Verbs of motion in the potential form:  
KISHA WA HAYAKU HASHIRU KOTO GA DEKIMASU.

2. Verbs of action in the potential form:  
ANATA WA NIHONGO WO KAKU KOTO GA DEKIMASU

3. Verbs implying permission in the potential form:  
WATAKUSHI WA YASUMU KOTO GA DEKIMASU

4. Exceptions:

ASHI GA MIE MASU. "(I) can see the leg."

KORE WA WAKARIMASU. "(I) can understand this."

AME GA FURU KOTO GA ARU. "There are occasions when it rains."

"It does rain."

or

"It can rain."

## KURAI and HODO

KURAI, (sometimes read GURAI), "about," means approximate position, but it is also used to express extent; therefore, it corresponds to "as....as."

HODO, "about" (this much), "means approximate degree or extent; therefore, it corresponds to "so....as."

KURAI or GURAI is used preferably with the affirmative predicate, but HODO is used either with affirmative or negative predicate.

JITENSHA WA KISHA KURAI HAYAKU HASHIRU KOTO GA DEKIMASU KA.

"Can bicycles run as fast as trains?"

JITENSHA WA KISHA HODO HAYAKU HASHIRU KOTO GA DEKIMASEN.

"Bicycles cannot run so fast as trains."



Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

- 一 此のへやの中にはがくせいはいく人居ますか。
- 二 此のへやの中に居る人はみんなこしかけて居ますか。
- 三 立つて日本語をおしえて居る人はだれですか。
- 四 あなたは奥さんと散歩して居ますか。
- 五 あなたは奥さんをつれて散歩しますか。
- 六 このへやにはまどがいくつありますか。
- 七 あなたのそばにだれがこしかけて居ますか。
- 八 あなたの家の近くには家がたくさんありますか。
- 九 この町は何とゆう町ですか。
- 十 船は汽車ぐらい早く走ることが出来ますか。
- 十一 自転車と自動車ではどつちが早く走ることが出来ますか。
- 十二 あなたは自動車ぐらい早く走ることが出来ますか。
- 十三 あなたには子供がいくたりありますか。
- 十四 自動車のおとはきかん車のぐらい大きいですか。
- 十五 あなたは先生ぐらい早く日本語をよむことが出来ますか。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 14

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Where is your family now? They are at the station.
2. Four birds are flying over the house.
3. The automobile is not so large as the locomotive.
4. The cat that is eating fish is a black one, and the one drinking water is a white one.
5. Are the students in this room all sitting down?  
No, one of them is standing.
6. Are your family riding in the automobile now?  
No, they are taking a walk near the coast.
7. You can write Japanese.
8. Can the student read as fast as the teacher?  
No, he cannot read so fast as the teacher.
9. What is your wife doing now? She is laundering.
10. Are both of these books dictionaries? No, one is a dictionary, but the other is a reader.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 15 (Dai jūgo ka)

左の方	hidari no hō	the left side; left-hand side (n.).
海	umi	sea; ocean (n.).
右の方	migi no hō	the right side; right-hand side (n.).
陸 (りく)	riku	land; shore (n.).
そう	sō	numerical classifier for ships, boats, etc.*
一そう	issō	one ship (n.).
汽船	kisen	steamship; steamer (n.).
ほかり船	hokake-bune	sailing-ship; sailboat (n.).
島	shima	island (n.).
通る (通つて)	tōru (tōtte)	to pass (by, through, along) (v.i.). (reg. v.). Conjunctive form: tōtte.
そばを通る	soba wo tōru	to pass (near) by.
向う	mukō	yonder, over there, the other side.
山	yama	mountain (n.).
高い	takai	high (adj.).
富士山	Fuji-san	Mt. Fuji (proper noun).
ちようじよう	chōjō	summit; mountain peak (n.).
雪	yuki	snow (n.).
なぜ	naze	why.*
寒い	samui	cold (as of weather) (adj.). cf., tsumetai for ice or water.
から	kara	because; since; for; as (post-position).*

外の	hoka no	other; another; different (adj.).
本州(本 じゆう)	Honshū	Honshū (the largest island of Japan proper (proper noun)).
で	de	in; at (meaning "within the confines or limits of .....").*
けれども	keredomo	however; but (postposition).
日本一	Nippon-ichi (Nihon-ichi)	first-in-Japan; best in Japan.*
日本一高い山	Nippon-ichi takai yama	the highest mountain in Japan.
たいわん	Taiwan	Taiwan; Formosa (proper noun).
湖(みずうみ)	mizuumi	lake (n.).
町から近い	machi kara chikai	close to town (lit., close from town).
と いう	tōi	far; distant; remote (adj.).
空(そら)	sora	sky (n.).
雲	kumo	clouds (n.).
少し(すこし)	sukoshi	a little; small (quantity) (adv.). cf., chisai for size (adj.).
降る(ふる) (降つて)	furu (futte)	to fall (only with reference to rain, snow, hail, etc.) (v.i.) (reg. v.). Conjunctive form: futte.
雨	ame	rain (n.).

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 15 (Dai jūgo ka)

SŌ, the numerical classifier for ships.

SŌ is a numerical classifier for ships and is subject to phonetic changes in compound numeral as follows:

- |          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| 1. ISSŌ  | 6. ROKUSŌ           |
| 2. NISŌ  | 7. SHICHISŌ         |
| 3. SANZŌ | 8. HASSŌ, (HACHISŌ) |
| 4. SHISŌ | 9. KUSŌ, (KYŪSŌ)    |
| 5. GOSŌ  | 10. JISSŌ           |

UMI NO UE NIWA FUNE GA TAKUSAN HASHITTE IMASU.

In the above sentence, the particle NI is construed with the verb HASHITTE IMASU to show where one finds the action taking place rather than to denote the place where the locomotion is taking place. Note also that UMI NO UE NI is placed at the beginning of the sentence as a notional subject.

### NAZE and KARA (DESU)

NAZE means "why," or "for what reason"; and KARA means "because," "since," "as," or "therefore." Note that KARA always follows a complete clause, or predicate verb or adjective (with the subject or object, or both implied or understood).

E.g., FUJISAN NO CHŌJŌ WA SAMUI KARA, YUKI GA FURIMASU

"Because the summit of Mt. Fuji is cold, it snows (there)."

"It snows on summit of Mt. Fuji, because it is cold."

KOKO NI WA YUKI GA ARU KARA, SAMUI N'DESU.

"Because we have snow here, it is cold."

"It is cold here, because we have snow."

HONSHŪ DE ICHIBAN TAKAI YAMA

The particle DE is placed after the word of place to indicate the bounds or limits within which the description of the thing named holds true. E.g.,

HONSHŪ DE ICHIBAN TAKAI YAMA.

"The highest mountain in HONSHŪ."

KORE WA KONO GAKKO DE ICHIBAN CHIISAI ISU DESU.

"This is the smallest chair in this school."

NIPPON-ICHI TAKAI YAMA and  
NIPPON-ICHI NO TAKAI YAMA

Both NIPPON-ICHI TAKAI YAMA and NIPPON-ICHI NO TAKAI YAMA mean "The highest mountain in Japan."



Answer the following questions in Japanese:

- 一、舟はどこを走つて居ますか。
- 二、ここから山が見えますか。
- 三、富士山は日本で一番高い山ですか。
- 四、あなたの家は町からとういんですか。
- 五、富士山のちようじようはなぜ寒いんですか。
- 六、だれが此のへやで一番高いんですか。
- 七、ここから海と湖が見えますか。
- 八、日本一高い山はどこにありますか。
- 九、今雨が降つて居ますか。
- 十、今空には雲がありますか。
- 十一、此のがつこうは町から近いんですか。
- 十二、本州で一番高い山の名前は何と言いますか。
- 十三、Ord Village の向うにある Fort の名前は何と言いますか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 15

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. That which is visible on the right-hand side is an island.
2. A steamship is passing near that island.
3. There is a mountain on the other side of the lake.
4. It is raining on that mountain.
5. Why mustn't I bring the dog?
6. Why are you doing the laundry now?
7. Why are the people looking up at the sky?
8. Since that mountain is high, there are clouds at the summit.
9. Since that dog's legs are long, it can run fast.
10. That boat is the fastest in this harbor.
11. That chair is the oldest in this school.
12. The station is near here.
13. My house is far from here.
14. The other people are outside.
15. May I read some other books?

## Supplementary E-J Exercises

### Lesson 15

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. May I read this book since I cannot read the other one?
2. The man who is reading the Japanese book is my teacher.
3. On the left is the land and on the right the sea.
4. Why can't you read this Japanese book?
5. Is there much snow on the summit of that mountain?  
Yes, since it is cold at the summit, there is much snow.
6. Is your house far from here? No, my house is fairly near.
7. Is it raining outside? No, there are clouds in the sky,  
but it is not raining.
8. What is the name of the nearest town? I don't know.
9. There are five sailboats sailing on the lake. Can you  
see the one which is cruising near the island?
10. Who is the oldest man in this town?

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 16 (Dai jūrokka)

や	ya	and; among others.*
もし	moshi	if; incase; provided (supposing) that. (adverb) (Always followed by a conditional form).*
ば	ba	particle, attached to the conditional base, indicating a condition or hypothesis: "if," "when."
共	domo	plural personal suffix for the 1st person. (If used with words re- ferring to the 2nd or 3rd person, the effect is derogatory.)
私共	watakushidomo	we
ない	nai	there is no ....; one has no .....; to be lacking in; be missing (adj.) (Familiar negative form for "ARI- NASEN.")
なければ	nakereba	if there is no ....; if one does not have. (NAKERE is the conditional base of the negative adjective NAI.)*
手	te	hand (n.).
物	mono	thing (n.).
も	mo	concessive particle, following the conjunctive (TE) form, indicating the notions "even if."
なくとも	nakutemo	even if there were no; even if one has no .....
話す	hanasu	to speak; talk; tell (v.t.)(reg. verb). Conjunctive form: hanasite.
手に	te ni	in (one's) hand.
持つ(持つて)	motsu (mottte)	to hold; have (v.t.) (reg. verb). Assimilated conj. form: motte.



コップ	koppū	glass; cup (n.).
落す	otosu	to drop; let fall (v.t.) (reg. verb). Conditional stem: otose Conjunctive form: otoshite.
どう	dō	how; what (adv.).
どうなりますか	dō narimasu ka	what will become of it?; how will it turn out?; what will happen?
こわれる	kowareru	to be broken; be damaged; break ( <u>v.i.</u> ) (semi-reg.).
たびたび	tabi-tabi	often; repeatedly; frequently (adv.).
天気	tenki.	weather; "fine day" (n.).
よい	yoi	good; fine; nice (adj.)
天気がよければ	tenki ga yoke- reba	if the weather is fine; if it is a fine day. (YOKERE is the con- ditional stem of the true adjective YOI.)
大抵	taitei	usually; as a rule; generally (adv.).

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 16 (Dai jūrokka)

#### YA and TO

YA is a particle used to indicate that the substantive to which it is attached is in a series of substantives, incompletely named: "...and...., etc." YA is not used after the last substantive in the series.

Both TO and YA join substantives (nouns, pronouns, or noun equivalents), but when TO is used, only the things mentioned are under consideration, and when YA is used, the things mentioned and other things of the same category are implied. TO, therefore, can be considered as an exclusive conjunction, and YA as a selective conjunction.

E.g., KAO NIWA ME YA HANA YA KUCHI GA ARIMASU

"There are eyes, a nose, a mouth, etc., on the face."

KAO NIWA ME TO HANA TO KUCHI GA ARIMASU

"There are eyes, a nose, and a mouth on the face."

#### MOSHI ME WO TOJIRE-BA and MOSHI MIMI GA NAKERE-BA

The conditional form of the verbs is made by joining the conditional particle -BA to the conditional base. E.g.,

"if or when there is"	AIE-BA (reg. verb)
"if or when one writes"	KAKE-BA (reg. verb)
"if or when one stands"	TATE-BA (reg. verb)
"if or when one closes"	TOJIRE-BA (semi-reg. verb)
"if or when one sees"	MIRE-BA (semi-reg. verb)
"if or when one shuts"	SHIMIRE-BA (semi-reg. verb)
"if or when one gives"	AGERE-BA (semi-reg. verb)
"if or when one opens"	AKERE-BA (semi-reg. verb)
"if or when one comes"	KURE-BA (irreg. verb)
"if or when one does"	SURE-BA (irreg. verb)

The conditional form of the true predicate adjective is made by dropping the final I and joining the ending -KERE-BA.

E.g., "if or when it is high"	TAKA-KERE-BA (true adj.)
"if or when it is blue"	AO-KERE-BA (true adj.)
"if or when it is long"	NAGA-KERE-BA (true adj.)
"if or when there is no ...."	NA-KERE-BA (negative adjective)

The conditional form for all practical purposes, may be regarded as either hypothetical ("if"), or temporal ("when") depending on the context in which it is used.

When the adverb MOSHI introduces the conditional clause, it emphasizes the hypothetical aspect of the conditional mood. MOSHI can be dropped without making any material difference in the meaning of the clause, but it cannot replace the conditional ending -EBA.

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

- 一、つくえの上には何がありますか。
- 二、足がなくても歩くことが出来ますか。
- 三、目をとじても見ることが出来ますか。
- 四、手がなくても物を取る事が出来ますか。
- 五、耳があれば何をすることが出来ますか。
- 六、耳がなければ見る事が出来ますか。
- 七、あなたは天気がよくても家の中に居ますか。
- 八、ねこには足が何本ありますか。
- 九、あなたは今右の手に何を持って居ますか。
- 十、まんねんひつやペンを落せばどうなりますか。
- 十一、はながなくても話すことが出来ますか。
- 十二、何で話しますか。
- 十三、あなたはたびたび散歩しますか。
- 十四、あなたはお金がたくさんあれば何をしますか。
- 十五、あなたには何がありますか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 16

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. If you open the door, you can see outside.
2. If I have a dictionary, I can read English.
3. I can learn Japanese without books.
4. If your legs are long, usually you can run fast.
5. If your eyes are good, you can see small things.
6. If it is cold, you may close the window.
7. What does one write with?
8. What does one walk with?
9. What does one eat with?
10. We frequently rest.
11. The students usually speak Japanese.
12. What happens if you sit on a paper box?
13. What happens to the grass if it rains?
14. There are books, pens, dictionaries, etc. on the desk.
15. One can drink water even if he has no cup.
16. One can walk even if he has no hands.
17. One can talk even if he has no eyes.
18. One cannot write characters without pen and paper.
19. One cannot smoke without tobacco.
20. One cannot hold things without hands.



Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

Lesson 16

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Can you speak Japanese? No, since I am not learning it, I cannot speak it.
2. Even if I can run fast, I cannot run so fast as an automobile.
3. Can you see it if you stand up? No, I cannot see it even if I stand up.
4. Don't drop this pen because it will break.
5. I often take a walk on the road by the sea; but if it rains, I stay at home.
6. If you close the door, you cannot see the man who is working.
7. If we have no hands, we cannot write anything.
8. If I close my eyes, I can see nothing.
9. Can you wash without water? No, I cannot wash without water.
10. If the box is small, please put it on the table.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 17 (Dai jūshichi ka)

時間	jikan	the time; hour (n.).
.....たい	.....tai	inflected suffix (aux. v.) attached to the <u>conjunctive base</u> of a verb to express desire: "to want to," "to wish to," to desire." -tai is conjugated like true adjective:*
		Bases: Conjunctive or Adverbial.....taku-; Conclusive or Attributive.....tai; conditional.....takere-.
知りたい	shiritai	I want to know (find out); one wants to know.
時	toki	time; occasion; moment; when (n.).
時間を知りたい、 時に	jikan wo shiritai <u>toki ni</u>	when one wants to know the time. Lit., "at the time (on the occasion) when one desires to find out the time."*
時計	tokei	watch; clock; time piece (n.).
針	hari	needle; hand (of a watch, etc.) (n.).
長くて	nagakute	is long and....(use of conjunctive form of adjectives to join two clauses).
指し(さし)	sashi	points to (at).....and..... (The conjunctive base of a verb may be used for all <u>co-ordinate</u> verbs in a <u>compound</u> sentence except the last verb.) SASHI is the conjunctive <u>base</u> of the regular verb SASU, "to point." (v.t.).
分	fun	minute (n.).*
兩	ryō	both; two.

兩方	ryōhō	both (sides) (n.).
来る	kuru	to come; arrive; reach (v.i.)(irreg. v.)
上に来る時は	ue ni kuru toki wa	when (they) come to the top. Lit., "the time when (they) come to the top."
丁度	chōdo	just; exactly (adv.).
十二時	jūni-ji	12 o'clock (n.).
.....時	.....ji	.....o'clock.*
共	tomo	both (inclusive particle); neither (with negative predicate). TOMO usually <u>replaces</u> the case particle.
兩方共	ryōhō-tomo	both. Lit., "two sides, including both of them."
六時半	rokujihan	6:30; half past six (n.).*
よる	yoru	night; at night; night-time (n.).
ひる	hiru	noon; midday; day; daytime (n.).
午前	gozen	forenoon; A.M. (n.).
午後	gogo	afternoon; P.M. (n.).
.....時間	.....jikan	.....hours (n.).*
一時間	ichi jikan	one hour (n.).
六十分	rokujippun	60 minutes.
一分	ippun	one minute (n.).*
秒(びょう)	byō	second (1/60 of a "fun").*
六十秒	rokuju-byō	60 seconds.
一日	ichi-nichi	a (one) day (n.).
二十四時間	nijūyo-jikan	24 hours (n.).
午前に十二時間	gozen ni jūnijikan	See page 22 for NI.
午後に十二時間	gogo ni jūnijikan	
何時	nan-ji	what time (cf., NAN-JIKAN "how many hours").

前	mae	before (n.).
・・・時・・・分・・・	.....ji.....fun.....	....minutes to ..(hour).....*
前	mae	
朝	asa	morning (n.).
日	hi	sun (n.).
出る(出ます)	deru (demasu)	to rise (as of the sun) ( <u>cf.</u> , "deru" to come out.)
起きる(起きて)	okiru (okite)	to get up; rise (v.i.) (semi-reg. verb). Conjunctive form: okite.
起きて	okite	.....get up and .....
やすむ(やすみます)	yasumu (yasumimasu)	to go to bed; retire. ( <u>cf.</u> , "to rest.") (reg. verb)
早く(早い)	hayaku (hayai)	early; quickly; fast (adv.) ( <u>cf.</u> , "hayaku hashiru.")
の	no	(used as a nominalizer.)
起きるの	okiru no	"getting up;" "to get up."
からだ	karada	body; constitution (n.).
からだにいい	karada ni ii	good for the health; healthful(adj.).
おそく(おそい)	osoku (osoi)	late; slowly. OSOKU is the conj-adv. stem of the adj. OSOI.
わるい	warui	bad; harmful; evil; wicked (adj.).
からだにわるい	karada ni warui	bad for the health; injurious to (one's) health.
朝はん	asahan	breakfast; (lit., morning meal)(n.).
ひるはん	hiruhan	lunch; (lit., noon meal) (n.).
ごろ	goro	about (approximate point of time).
何時ごろ	nan-ji goro	about what time.
お茶	ocha	tea (n.).
ゆうはん	yūhan	supper; (lit., evening meal) (n.).
大てい	taitei	generally; as a rule (adv.).
・・・時...分...すぎ	.....ji...fun...sugi	.....minutes past....(hour)....*
すぎ	sugi	past; after.*



## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 17 (Dai jūshichi ka)

-TAI, the desiderative inflected suffix

The inflected suffix -TAI following the conjunctive base of a verb expresses desire. Therefore, it may be translated as "to want to," "to wish to," "to desire." The stems of -TAI are similar to those of true adjectives, and like true adjectives incorporate within themselves the notion of the verb "to be."

E.g., "(I) wish to know".....SHIRI-TAI (N' DESU.....polite).  
cf., SHIROI N' DESU.

"(I) do not wish to know".....SHIRI-TAKU WA ARIMASEN.  
cf., KUROKU WA ARIMASEN.

"if (I) wish to know".....SHIRI-TAKERE-BA  
cf., AKERE-BA.

"even if (I) wish to know".....SHIRI-TAKUTE-MO.  
cf., TE GA NAKUTE MO.

JIKAN WO SHIRITAI TOKI NI and JŪ KARA GO WO HIKU TO

JIKAN WO SHIRITAI is a relative clause used to modify the noun TOKI, "time," the particle NI is the postposition of time. The literal translation of JIKAN WO SHIRITAI TOKI NI, therefore, will be "at the time when one wishes to know the hour."

A distinction, however, should be made between clauses ending with TOKI NI and -TO, though both may be introduced with "when."

TOKI NI means "at the time when," and the predicate verb or adjective immediately preceding it may be in the present tense or past tense. TO, however, is placed always after the present tense form of the verb, and indicates the particular occasion or sets forth the circumstances leading to what is further stated. Therefore, TO can be translated as "upon" or "on."

E.g., UCHI E KAERU TO HITO GA KITE IMASHITA  
"On returning home, (I) found a visitor."

It can also be translated as "then." E.g.,  
JŪ KARA GO WO HIKU TO GO GA NOKORIMASU  
"Subtract five from ten, then five will remain."

It can also be translated by "as" or "just as." E.g.,  
KESHA KARA ORINU TO AME GA FURI (-HAJIME) MASHITA.  
"Just as (I) got off the train, it (started to) rain(ed)."

FUN (minute)

The compound numeral in which FUN, "minute," is used is subject to phonetic changes as shown below:

- |                    |                      |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. IPPUN           | 6. ROPPUN            |
| 2. NIFUN           | 7. SHICHIFUN         |
| 3. SAMPUN          | 8. HACHIFUN (HAPFUN) |
| 4. SHIFUN (YOMPUN) | 9. KUFUN (KYUFUN)    |
| 5. GOFUN           | 10. JIPPUN           |

JI (o'clock)

Before JI, "o'clock," the numeral SHI changes to the Japanese form YO. This is the only phonetic change in the compound numeral ending with -JI.

ROKU-JI-HAN; JU-JI JU-GO-FUN MAE;  
SHICHI-JI NIJIPPUN SUGI

ROKUJI HAN, "half past six," can also be expressed as ROKUJI SANJIPPUN, "thirty minutes past six." In the phrase JÜJI JÜGOFUN MAE, "fifteen minutes to ten (o'clock)," note that JI, "o'clock," follows the numeral indicating the hour; FUN, "minutes," follows the numeral indicating the minutes; and MAE, "to or before," is placed at the end of the phrase. Observe also that in the phrase SHICHIJI NIJIPPUN SUGI, "twenty minutes past seven (o'clock)," the construction is identical with the phrase ending in -MAE, but SUGI can be omitted without making any material difference in the meaning.

The English phrases "quarter to ....." and "quarter past....." are not used in Japanese. These phrases should be rendered "fifteen minutes to ....." and "fifteen minutes after .....", respectively.

ICHI-JIKAN; NI-FUNKAN; SAN-BYÖKAN

Note that -JI means "o'clock," and that ICHI-JIKAN means "(a period of) one hour." The suffix -KAN can also be joined to FUN, "minute," and BYÖ, "second."

E.g., NI-FUNKAN....."(a period of) two minutes."  
SAN BYÖKAN....."(a period of) three seconds."

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 17

Translate the following text into Japanese:

1. About what time do you want to take a walk? I want to take a walk about 3 P.M.
2. When I get up in the morning, I drink some water.
3. I want to take a walk, but if the weather is bad, I shall stay at home.
4. What time is it now? It is exactly 9 o'clock. How many hours will you work from now? I will work 7 hours.
5. May I read your Japanese book as I want to learn Japanese?
6. Taking a walk by the sea early in the morning is good for one's health.
7. To eat a great deal late at night is bad for one's health.
8. Please come to my house between three and four in the afternoon.
9. When I take a walk, I usually pass near the lake.
10. This is a book I want to read, but I cannot read it now.

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

一 あなたは朝何時におきますか。

二 朝はんは何時に食べますか。

三 ひるはんは何時ごろ食べますか。

四 ゆうはんは何時に食べますか。

五 あなたは大てい何時から何時までべんきようしますか。

六 時間を知りたい時には何を見ますか。

七 時計には針が何本ありますか。

八 時計の針はどちらが長いんですか。

九 兩方のほうが上に來る時は何時ですか。

十 午前は何時から何時までですか。

十一 一時間には何びようありますか。

十二 午後には何時間ありますか。

十三 今は何時ですか。

十四 朝早くおきるのはいゝんですか、わるいんですか。



Write complete sentences with the following clauses:

一、家のそばにある木は

二、そらをとんで居る鳥は

三、はたらきたい子供は

四、さんぽしたいがくせい

五、時計を見て居る人は

六、立つて居るのは

七、せんとくをする時に

八、ひるはんを食べる時に

九、日本語をならう時に

十、早いから

十一、私が書きますから

十二、水がなければ

十三、みずうみが近ければ

十四、英語を書いて

十五、コップを落しても

十六、時計を落せば

十七、箱の上に立てば

十八、一本の足で歩くことが

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 18 (Dai jū

今日	kyō (konnichi)	today (n.).
・・・曜日	.....yōbi	suffix used to form the names of the days of the week. ("bi" is often omitted in conversation.)
何曜日	nan-yōbi (nani-yōbi)	What day of the week.
月曜日	getsu-yōbi	Monday (proper noun).
明日	ashita (asu; myōnichi)	tomorrow (n.).
火曜日	ka-yōbi	Tuesday (proper noun).
明後日	asatte (myōgo-nichi)	day after tomorrow (n.).
水曜日	sui-yōbi	Wednesday (proper noun).
もう	mō	already; now; no more (with negative verb) (adv.). <u>cf.</u> , MŌ HITOTSU "one more."
土曜日	do-yōbi	Saturday (proper noun).
まだ	mada	yet; still; not yet (with negative verb) (adv.).
いえ まだです	ie, mada desu	no, not yet.*
・・・週間(しゅうかん)	....shūkan	numerical classifier used in counting weeks.
一週間	is-shūkan	one week (period) (n.).
何日	nan-nichi	how many days.
七日	nanuka (nanoka) (shichi-nichi) (shichinichi)	seven days.
日曜日	nichi-yōbi	Sunday (p.n.).
木曜日	moku-yōbi	Thursday (p.n.).

金曜日	kin-yōbi	Friday (p.n.).
始(はじめ)	hajime	beginning (n.).
始の	hajime no	first (quasi-adj.).
日	hi	day (n.).
さいご	saigo	last; final (Lit., the very last) (n.).
・・・番目	....ban-me	-st; -nd; -rd; -th (ordinal suffix).* (Denotes the number in a series and not the given number i.e., No. 1; No. 2; etc.)
二番目	niban-me	second (n.).
三番目	samban-me	third (n.).
四番目	yoban-me (yomban-me)	fourth (n.).
五番目	goban-me	fifth (n.).
後	ato	after (n.).
勉強する (べんきょうする) (benkyō shimasu) (べんきょうします) 学校(がっこう) gakkō	benkyō suru gakkō	to study (v.t.). <u>cf.</u> , "SAMPO SURU." school (n.).
へ	e	to; towards ("e" is a directional particle indicating the place towards which one is going or coming).
行く	iku (yuku)	to go (v.i.) (reg. verb). Bases: Imperfective.....ika-; Conjunctive.....iki-; Conclusive.....iku; Attributive.....iku-; Conditional.....ike-; Imperative.....ike. Assimilated Conjunctive form: itte.
何故 (なぜ)	naze	why
休	yasumi	holiday; vacation; "day off"; rest; pause (n.).*
・・・ですから です	(noun) + desu kara desu	it is because it is (noun).

だけ	dake . . .	only; alone; just.*
...の外に	....no hoka ni	besides; except for; only (with negative form translated positively).
も	mo	also; even (often used after certain adverbs for emphasis but not translated into English.)
時々	toki-doki	occasionally; sometimes; now and then; at times (adv.). <u>cf.</u> , "tabi-tabi" frequently.



## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 18

#### MŌ DO-YŌBI DESU KA and IIE, MADA DESU

MŌ DO-YŌBI DESU KA means "Is it already Saturday?" A complete answer to this question would be IIE, MADA DO-YŌBI DEWA ARIMASEN or IIE, MADA DO-YŌBI DEWA NAI NO DESU, "No, it is not Saturday yet." Therefore, the shortened form MADA DESU implies the negative idea.

MADA, however, can mean "still," in such a construction as MADA ARIMASU, "There are still (some more)."

#### -BAN-ME

The ordinal number NI-BAN means "No. 2", and NI-BAN-ME means "the second." -ME is a suffix joined to compound numerals to show the order in a series just as in the case of English ordinal numbers. -BAN-ME is preceded by Chinese numerals, but for reasons of taboo, the Japanese numeral YO- or YON- is substituted for SHI.

#### YASUMI

YASUMI is the conjunctive base of the regular verb YASUMU, "to rest." The conjunctive base of some verbs constitutes a noun. E.g.,

YASUMI.....holiday; vacation; rest; "day-off."  
KOSHUKAKE.....seat; bench; chair; stool.  
YOMI.....reading.  
KAKI.....writing.  
TŌRI.....Passage; road; street; thoroughfare.  
OSHIE.....teachings; instruction; lesson.  
HANASHI.....talk; conversation; story; rumor;  
negotiations.

#### DAKE

DAKE, following substantives, phrases, and attributive stems, means "only," "just," "alone," "at least." E.g.,

GAKKŌ NO YASUMI JA NICHIYŌ DAKE DESU

"School holidays are limited to Sundays."

KONO GAKKŌ NO GAKUSEI WA HAWAI KARA DAKE

KURU N' JA ARIMASEN.

"Students of this school do not come only from Hawaii."

KAKU DAKE

"Only to write."

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

- 一 二十五日は日曜日ですか。
- 二 日曜日には生徒はがつこうへ行きますか。
- 三 今日は何曜日ですか。
- 四 明日は何曜日ですか。
- 五 明後日は何曜日ですか。
- 六 一週間には一日しか休みがありませんか。
- 七 一週間の四番目の日は何曜日ですか。
- 八 一週間のまんなかの日は何曜日ですか。
- 九 水曜日は火曜日の前ですか。
- 十 木曜日は何曜日と何曜日の間にありますか。
- 十一 土曜日と日曜日にはあなたは何をしますか。
- 十二 日曜日にはあなたは何か故学校へ行きますか。
- 十三 あなたは英語だけを書くことが出来ますか。
- 十四 あなたのおつくえの上には本だけがありますか。
- 十五 日曜日の外にも時々休みがありますか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 18

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. It sometimes rains in the afternoon.
2. It frequently rains in the morning.
3. It usually rains early in the morning.
4. What's the name of the third book?
5. Whose house is the second one from the right?
6. At what time will you be getting up on Saturday?
7. About what time will you be going to town on Sunday?
8. What will you do on Monday?
9. Who's coming on Tuesday?
10. This is the only one that's bad.
11. You are the only one who want to go.
12. I'm the only one that drinks tea.
13. I'm going to the mountains tomorrow.
14. Since today is Friday, I'm not going to study.
15. Since today is Sunday, I'm not going to school.

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 16

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. When you want to go to Mt. Fuji, what train do you take (ride in)?
2. Is this Tuesday a school holiday?
3. The student who is studying Japanese is Mr. Griggs' child.
4. On Fridays we usually eat fish for supper, but when Lt. Buckley comes we don't eat fish.
5. On what days of the week do you work? I work from Monday to Saturday. Do you work on Sundays, too? No, since Sunday is the only day of rest in the week, I don't work on that day.
6. Please take only the book Capt. Armstrong is reading.
7. I have other houses besides this, but none of them is as large as this one.
8. Today is already Tuesday, but I'm still doing Monday's work (shigoto).
9. Can you come to my house at ten on Tuesday morning?
10. Since this is the last book, I cannot give it to you.



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 19 (Dai jūku ka)

色々な	iro-iro na	various; various kinds of ; of different kinds (sorts) (quasi-adj.)
窓	mado	window (n.)
靴 (くつ)	kutsu	shoes (n.)
その他	sono hoka	besides these; in additon to these. *
から	<u>kāra</u>	empty (n.)
いっぱい	ippai	full (n.)
インキ	inki	ink (n.)
のり	<u>norī</u>	paste (n.)
びん	bin	bottle (n.)
。。。ずつ	---zutsu	---each
いくつずつ	iku-tsu zutsu	how many each
はさみ	<u>hasami</u>	scissors (n.)
ナイフ	naifu	(pocket) knife (n.)
足	soku (Chinese reading)	numerical classifier used in counting "foot wear", i.e. shoes, sox, etc.*
一足	is-soku	a pair; one pair
ちょう	chō	numerical classifier used in counting things with handles, such as scissors, knives, tools, etc. *
一ちょう	itchō	one (thing with handles)
で	de	of; with (instrumental particle denoting the material used.) C.f., ME DE MONO WO MIMASU.
何で	nan de (nanide)	of (or with) what (material)
こしらえる	koshiraeru	to make; manufacture (v.t.) (semi-reg.)
木	ki	tree; wood (n.). <u>C.f.</u> , "ki" Les. 3

---- も ---- も      ---mo ---mo

both --- and ---; ---as well as---; Cf.,  
See page 70 for I EKO MO HIZUMO NODE  
IRASU. \*

ガラス      garasu

glass (n.)

かわ      kawa

leather; skin (n.)

鉄(鐵)(てつ)      tetsu

iron (n.) (often used to mean "steel")

銀      gin

silver (n.)

銀貨(銀か)      ginka

silver coin; silver piece (n.)

白銅      hakudō

nickel (n.)

白銅貨(白銅か)      hakudōka

nickel coin (n.)

銅      dō

copper (n.)

銅貨(銅か)      dōka

copper coin (n.)

金      kane

metal (n.) Cf., "okane" (money)

ゆびわ      yubiwa

(finger) ring (n.)

金      kin

gold (n.) Cf., "okane" and "kane".

高い      takai

expensive (adj.)

金は高い金  
です      kin wa takai kane  
desu.

gold is a precious metal.

安い      yasui

cheap; inexpensive; low (in price)  
(adj.)

めがね      megane

spectacles; (eye) glasses (n.)

ひき出し      hikidashi

drawer (as of a table) (n.)

(ひき出し) は (hikidashi) wa

use of "wa" to particularize the hikidashi as opposed to the other parts of the thing named (table).

つく(ついて)      tsuku (tsuite)

to be attached (to); belong to; go with  
(v.i.) (reg.v.) assimilated conj. form:  
tsuite-----.

ついて居る      tsuite iru

construction to denote "belonging to"  
or "attached to" (persisting state im-  
plied).

ひき出しが ついて居ます	hikidashi ga tsuite imasu	there are drawers; it has drawers.
ボタン	botan	button (n.)
穴	ana	hole (n.)
あく(あいて)	aku (aite)	to become open ( <u>v.i.</u> ) (reg. verb). Assimilated conj. form: AITE. <u>cf.</u> , "AKERU" ( <u>v.t.</u> ) Lesson 4.
あいて居ます	aite imasu	construction to denote "is open" (persisting state implied). *
書いてあります	kaite arimasu	is written *
しまる(しまつて)	shimaru (shimatte)	to be closed; be shut ( <u>v.i.</u> ) <u>cf.</u> , "shimoru" ( <u>v.t.</u> )

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

(Lesson 19)

YA---EA SOTO HOMA TARUSAN ARIMASU.

In this construction it is more idiomatic not to use the particle NI-NO after the word HOMA, "besides." C.f., NICHIYŌ NO HOMA NIMO MASUAE GA ARIMASU.

SOKU and CHŌ

SOKU means "foot" or "leg" and it is the Chinese reading for the character ASHI. When SOKU is joined to Chinese numerals it indicates so many pairs of foot wear.

SOKU is subject to phonetic changes in compound numeral as follows:

- |                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. ISSOKU            | 6. ROKUSOKU              |
| 2. NISOKU            | 7. SHICHISOKU (NANASOKU) |
| 3. SANZOKU           | 8. HASSOKU               |
| 4. SHISOKU (YONSOKU) | 9. KYŪSOKU               |
| 5. GOSOKU            | 10. JISSOKU              |
- MANZOKU ---"how many pairs"

CHŌ is a numerical classifier for objects with handles as well as for objects carried in the hand, e.g. knives, scissors, firearms, tools, etc.

CHŌ does not undergo phonetic changes in compound numeral.

---MO---MO

MO, when used after each of two substantives in a sentence or clause ending with a positive verb, it means "both---and".

However, when so used in a sentence or clause ending with a negative verb, it is translated "neither---nor." In this case the negative verb is translated positively. E.g.,

TO MO MATCHI NO DŌ MO KI DE KOSHIRAE MASU.

"Both doors and match sticks are made of wood."

HON MO KUTSU MO KANE DE KOSHIRAE MASEN.

"Neither books nor shoes are made of metal."

TO GA AITE IMASU

The conjunctive form of an intransitive verb followed by IRU (or IMASU) expresses the state or condition the subject is in.

TO GA AITE IMASU. "The door is open."

"You will find the door open."



In some instances, TO GA AITE LIASU means "the door is opening," but such usage is rare.

TO GA AKETE ARIMASU

The conjunctive form of a transitive verb followed by ARU (or ARIMASU) also describes the state or condition the subject is in, but implies that the persisting state or condition is a result of the act of some agent: E.g.,

TO GA AKETE ARIMASU.

"The door is open."

"The door is left open."

"Some one left the door open."

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

- 一、此のへやの中に何がありますか。
- 二、あなたははくつをいくそく持つて居ますか。
- 三、テーブルやいすやつくえは大てい何でこしらえますか。
- 四、五十銭は白銅ですか。
- 五、銅やてつは高い金ですか、安い金ですか。
- 六、本は何でこしらえますか。
- 七、あなたのじどう車の戸はあけてありますか。
- 八、あなたのつくえのひき出しはいつもあいて居ますか。
- 九、私共の本の中には何が書いてありますか。
- 十、あなたのつくえの上には本とえんぴつと箱がいくつずつありますか。
- 十一、あなたの家のまどは大ていしめてありますか。
- 十二、銅と白銅と銀と金ではどれが一番高いんですか。
- 十三、びんは木でこしらえますか。
- 十四、本もきつても紙でこしらえますか。

E-J Translation Exercises  
(Lesson 19)

1. This bicycle is the cheapest.
2. This leather purse is the most expensive one.
3. In Japan there are many high mountains besides Mt. Fuji.
4. There is nothing except books.
5. Some one has left (one's) ring on the desk.
6. I've told him about that.
7. This watch is stopped.
8. I'm up already.
9. How many drawers does that desk have?
10. How many buttons does this have?
11. This box is empty. That glass is full.
12. Locomotives are made of iron.
13. Small boats are usually made of wood.
14. There are two bottles on the table.
15. There is a pair of scissors in the drawer.

Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises  
(Lesson 19)

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Going by steamship is inexpensive, but I want to go by train because the train is faster than the steamship.
2. Whose book is this? I don't know since there is no name written on it.
3. Is there nothing in the leather purses? Yes, there are some silver, nickel and copper coins.
4. If you drop the buttons, they will break as they are made of glass.
5. When you open the drawer of my desk, don't take the English dictionary.
6. I cannot read these small characters without glasses.
7. Since there is a hole in my shoe, I cannot walk so fast as you.
8. If the door of your house is open, please close it since the big dog will come out.
9. Is your watch made of gold? No, since this is a cheap one, it is made of nickel.
10. Please make me a pair of shoes. Yes, sir. What leather shall I make it out of?



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 20 (Dai nijikka)

名前	namae	name (n.)
知つて居ますか	shitte imasu ka	do you know? (Present tense expressed by the progressive form.) Cf., "shiri-masen", page 53
---- ケ月	-ka-getsu	numerical classifier for counting months used with the numerals read in Chinese. When read in Japanese, the classifier will be "tsuki", e.g., "hito-tsuki" (one month), "futa-tsuki" (two months), etc. *
一ヶ月	ik-ka-getsu	one month (n.) Cf., "jikan", "fun", etc. les. 17
約	yaku	approximately; about; or thereabouts... (adv.) ( <u>always placed in front of the compound numeral</u> )
四週間(四しゅうしゅう 間)	shi-shūkan (yon-shūkan)	four weeks
--- 年	-nen	numerical classifier for counting years.
一年	ichi-nen	one year (n.) (Cf., "ik-ka-getsu", above.)
十二ヶ月	jūni-ka getsu	twelve months
一月	ichi-gatsu	January (p.n.) (Note "gatsu" is constructed with the numerals read in Chinese to indicate the <u>names of months</u> )
二月	ni-gatsu	February (p.n.)
三月	san-gatsu	March (p.n.)
四月	shi-gatsu	April (p.n.)
五月	go-gatsu	May (p.n.)
六月	roku-gatsu	June (p.n.)

七月	shichi-gatsu	July (p.n.)
八月	hachi-gatsu	August (p.n.)
九月	ku-gatsu	September (p.n.)
十月	jū-gatsu	October (p.n.)
十一月	jūichi-gatsu	November (p.n.)
十二月	jūni-gatsu	December (p.n.)
さいしょ	saisho	the first; very first (the very); beginning (n.) ("sai", a prefix indicating the superlative degree, and "sho" (beginning). Cf., "saigo", see below)
月	tsuki	month(n.)
さいしょの月	saisho no tsuki	the first month
正月	shōgatsu	January; the New Year (n.)
---とも言います	-to-mo-imasu	(they) also call (it)...(it) is also called...; is also known as...*
さいご	saigo	last; final (n). "sai", a prefix indicating the superlative degree, and "go" (last). Cf., "saisho", see above)
さいごの月	saigo no tsuki	the last month
春	haru	spring (n.)
夏	natsu	summer (n.)
秋	aki	autumn; fall (n.)
冬	fuyu	winter (n.)
今月	konagatsu	this month; the present month (n.)
来月	raigatsu	next month; the coming month (n.)
来月は十一月です	raigatsu wa jūichi-gatsu desu	"Next month is November", or "Next month will be November." (The simple present form expresses either (1) present tense, or (2) definite future tense.)

の次に來ます	no tsugi ni kimasu	comes next to; it comes after; it follows. Cf., "tsugi" (n.) Les. 6; ar "ni", Les. 17
どつちが早く 來ますか	dotchi ga hayaku kimasuka	which comes earlier.
あたゝかい (あたゝかくて)	atatakakai (atatakakute)	warm; mild (temperature) (adj.)
あたゝかくて	atatakakute	it is warm and... (conj. form of true adj.)
暑い	atsui	hot (adj.)
涼しい(すずしい) (すずしくて)	suzushii (suzushikute)	cool (adj.) Cf., "atatakakute", above
いつ	itsu	when
冬に	fuyu ni	in or during the winter (winter time).
咲く(さく)	saku	to blossom, bloom, flower (v.i.)
とし	kotoshi	this year; the present year (n.)
---ましょう	...mashō	"probably"; "I suppose"; probable future form of masu, see page 40
---ましょうか	...mashō ka	"I wonder if...", "Do you suppose..."
さきましょうか	sakimashō ka	Do you suppose it will bloom...
まだ----	mada... (neg. pred.)	not...yet; not...by; not...so early as
--ないでしょう	..nai deshō	negative form of deshō*
さかないでしょう	sakanai deshō	it probably will not bloom; I suppose it will not blossom. (Negative form of "saku deshō". (Note the absence of "n" between "sakanai" and "deshō")
たぶん	tabun	perhaps.*
はじめ	hajime	beginning; early part; first (n.) Cf. "hajime no hi".
と	to	if; when; whenever. See page 54 for TO.
人々	hito-bito	people (n.)

花見	hanami	flower-viewing (n.) Cf., "yasumi" Les. 18, G.N. *
に	ni	to; for; in order to; for the purpose of; (particle used to indicate the purpose of an action.)*
出掛ける(でかける)(でかけます)	dekakeru (dekakemasu)	to go out; start (or set) out (as on an excursion trip, journey, etc.) (v.i.) (semi-reg.)*
花見に出掛ける	hanami ni dekakeru	"to start out on a flower-viewing excursion". (conjunctive stem + NI + action verb)*
で (は)	de (wa)	in; at; meaning "within the confines or limits of..." See "Honshū de", page 84.
きつと	kitto	surely; certainly; undoubtedly (adv.)*
きつとふり- ましょう	kitto furimashō	it will most likely (very likely) rain. Lit., "Undoubtedly (because the speaker is certain of his conviction) it will (probably) rain (because he has no control over the acts of GOD.)"
よくなる	yoku naru	to improve; get better. See "-NI NAREBAZU", page 54.
おわり	owari	end; conclusion; close (n.)
あつくなる	atsuku naru	to become hot. See "yoku naru", above.
海	umi	sea(side) Cf., "umi" (sea; ocean) Les. 15.
へ	e	to; towards (particle).
そして	soshite	and; and then; after that.
から	kara	after (when it follows the conjunctive form of the verb) Cf., "kara" (after nouns) meaning "from", Les. 8; and, "kara" (after conclusive forms of verbs and adjectives) to express cause, Les. 15. G.N. *
かえる	kaeru	to return; go or come back (to one's starting point which is usually the home) (v.i.) (reg. verb).



かえる

kaeru

to return; go or come back (to one's starting point which is usually the home) (v.i.) (reg. verb).

Bases:

Imperfective.....kaera-;  
Conjunctive.....kaeri-;  
Conclusive.....kaeru;  
Attributive.....kaeru-;  
Conditional.....kaere-;  
Imperative.....kaere.  
Assimilated conj. form: kaette.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 20 (Dai nijik ka)

#### GATSU and GETSU

Observe that the names of the months are made up of Chinese numerals plus GATSU. E.g.,

January	ICHI (or SHŌ)	-GATSU	July	SHICHI	-GATSU
February	NI	-GATSU	August	HACHI	-GATSU
March	SAN	-GATSU	September	KU	-GATSU
April	SHI	-GATSU	October	JŪ	-GATSU
May	GO	-GATSU	November	JU-ICHI	-GATSU
June	ROKU	-GATSU	December	JU-NI	-GATSU

Note also that the numerical classifier used in counting months is GETSU preceded by the particle KA, e.g.,

one month	*IK	-KA-GETSU	seven months	SHICHI-KA-GETSU
two months	NI	-KA-GETSU	eight months	*HAK -KA-GETSU
three months	SAN	-KA-GETSU		HACHI-KA-GETSU
four months	SHI	-KA-GETSU	nine months	KU -KA-GETSU
	*YON	-KA-GETSU	ten months	*JIK -KA-GETSU
five months	GO	-KA-GETSU		
six months	ROK	-KA-GETSU		

\*Phonetic change: The consonant K does not undergo any change after SAN or YON.

For counting years, simply substitute KA-NEN for KA-GETSU. It is more common, however, to drop KA in the phrase KA-NEN. The only phonetic change to be considered in this form of compound numeral is the one for "four years", i.e., YO-NEN.

#### SAISHO and SAIGO

SAI in the compounds SAISHO and SAIGO, is a superlative prefix; therefore, SAISHO means "the very first or beginning," and SAIGO means "the very last."

#### ...-MASHŌ and ...-DESHŌ

-MASHŌ, the polite probable-future suffix, has been introduced in Les. 8. (See G.N.) Observe that it was used with the sense of contemplation or determination on the part of the first person. In this lesson, however, it is used with the third person in the probable or conjectural sense, i.e., HANA WA SAKI MASHŌ KA "Do you suppose the flowers will blossom?" AME GA FURI-MASHŌ "It will probably rain."

-DESHŌ is the probable-future form of DESU. (See page 3). -DESHŌ is joined to the predicate verb or adjective in the present or past tense to express probability or supposition. E.g., HANA WA SAKANAI-DESHŌ "The flower will probably not blossom," or "I suppose the flower will not blossom."

-DESHŌ is preferably used in conjunction with predicate verbs whose subject is in the second or third person, and -MASHŌ in conjunction with verbs of action whose subject is in the first person. E.g.,

1st person:	WATAKUSHI WA KI-MASHŌ	"I will come." (determinative)
2nd person:	ANATA WA SHITTE-IRU DESHŌ	"I suppose you know." (probability or supposition)
3rd person:	ANO HITO WA SHITTE-IRU DESHŌ	"He probably knows." (probability or supposition)

"(Probable-future form)-KA" expresses supposition or wonder, i.e., "Do you suppose . . . ?" "I wonder if. . . ." E.g.,

HANA WA SAKI-MASHŌ KA or HANA WA SAKU DESHŌ KA.  
"Do you suppose the flower will blossom?"  
"I wonder if the flower will blossom?"

ICHI-GATSU WA SHŌ-GATSU TO-MO II-MASU.

ICHI-GATSU WA SHŌ-GATSU TO-MO II-MASU means "ICHI-GATSU" is also called "SHŌ-GATSU." MO is inserted between TO and II-MASU to express the idea of "also" or "as well." (See Lesson 12, TO II-MASU; and Lesson 13, "NERO MO...")

SAN-GATSU NI WA MADA SAKA -NAI DESHŌ

MADA means "(not) yet," "still," "as yet," or "so far." SAN-GATSU NI WA MADA SAKA-NAI DESHŌ, therefore, means "I suppose (the flower) will not be in bloom by March," or "(the flower) probably will not yet be in bloom in March."

TABUN SHI-GATSU NO HAJIME NI SAKI-MASHŌ

TABUN . . . -MASHŌ (or DESHŌ) means "it is probable (likely) that . . ."; "it is more than probable that . . ."; "the chances are that . . ."; "the probability is that . . ." Therefore, TABUN SHI-GATSU NO HAJIME NI SAKI-MASHŌ means "It will most likely blossom towards the beginning of April."

KITTO AME GA FURI-MASHŌ or KITTO AME GA FURU DESHŌ

KITTO AME GA FURI-MASHŌ means "I suppose it is sure to rain." "I think that it will surely rain." -MASHŌ or -DESHŌ implies conjecture on the part of the speaker, and it may be translated as "I suppose . . ." "it probably will . . ." KITTO . . . -MASHŌ, therefore, may be translated "it is most likely to. . . ."

## HANAMI NI DEKAKE-MASU

The particle NI placed after the conjunctive base of verbs or Chinese compounds that can be rendered into verbs, such as SANPO-SURU, and SENTAKU-SURU, denotes purpose, e.g., "(in order) to," "for (the purpose of)," etc. HANAMI-NI DEKAKE-MASU, therefore, means "to start off on a flower-viewing (excursion)!" (See Lesson 18, G.N., YASUMI for conjunctive base used as a noun.)

## SUZUSHIKU NATTE KARA KAERI-MASU

KARA joined to the conjunctive (-TE or -DE) form of the verb means "after". SUZUSHIKU NATTE KARA KAERI-MASU, therefore, means "(They) return after it gets (or has become) cooler."



Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

一 一年のさいしよの月は何月ですか。

二 一ヶ月には約何しゅう間ありますか。

三 春は何日から何日までですか。

四 今は夏ですか。

五 春の次には何が來ますか。

六 いつあついですか。

七 さくらの花は何月ごろさきますか。

八 さくらの花がさくと人は何をしますか。

九 冬には時々何がふりますか。

十 日本ではいつ雨がたくさんふりますか。

十一 いつ天氣がよくなりますか。

十二 天氣がよくなるとあなたは魚をとりに行きますか。

十三 あさとひるではどちらがすずしいんですか。

十四 あつい時にはどこへ行きますか。

十五 ゆうはんを食べてから何をしますか。

E-J Translation Exercises  
(Lesson 20)

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. I suppose I shall go out to see the flowers tomorrow.
2. Today, an old woman is coming to do the laundry.
3. It's usually cold when it snows.
4. When it rains, it gets cooler.
5. When (you) go to school, (you) learn various things.
6. I study for about 50 minutes after I get up in the morning.
7. I will eat supper after I get home.
8. I go to school 11 months in a year.
9. That student will study Japanese for one year.
10. It will no doubt get cooler in September (when September is here).
11. Flowers will probably bloom in May.
12. I suppose grandfather will not come home for lunch.
13. I suppose the weather will not improve by April.
14. Summer is hot, and autumn is cool.
15. I suppose it will not rain today.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 20 (Dai nijikka)

名前	namae	name (n.)
知つて居ますか	shitte imasu ka	do you know? (Present tense expressed by the progressive form.) Cf., "shiri-masen", page 50
---- ヶ月	-ka-getsu	numerical classifier for counting months used with the numerals read in Chinese. When read in Japanese, the classifier will be "tsuki", e.g., "hito-tsuki" (one month), "futa-tsuki" (two months), etc. *
一ヶ月	ik-ka-getsu	one month (n.) Cf., "jikan", "tun", etc. Les. 17
約	yaku	approximately; about; or thereabouts (adv.) ( <u>always placed in front of the compound numeral</u> )
四週間(四しゅう 間)	shi-shūkan (yon-shūkan)	four weeks
--- 年	-nen	numerical classifier for counting years.
一年	ichi-nen	one year (n.) (Cf., "ik-ka-getsu", above.)
十二ヶ月	jūni-ka getsu	twelve months
一月	ichi-gatsu	January (p.n.) (Note "gatsu" is constructed with the numerals read in Chinese to indicate the <u>names of months</u> )
二月	ni-gatsu	February (p.n.)
三月	san-gatsu	March (p.n.)
四月	shi-gatsu	April (p.n.)
五月	go-gatsu	May (p.n.)
六月	roku-gatsu	June (p.n.)

七月	shichi-gatsu	July (p.n.)
八月	hachi-gatsu	August (p.n.)
九月	ku-gatsu	September (p.n.)
十月	jū-gatsu	October: (p.n.)
十一月	jūichi-gatsu	November (p.n.)
十二月	jūni-gatsu	December (p.n.)
さいしょ	saisho	the first; very first (the very); beginning (n.) ("sai", a prefix indicating the superlative degree, and "sho" (beginning). Cf., "saigo", see below)
月	tsuki	month(n.)
さいしょの月	saisho no tsuki	the first month
正月	shōgatsu	January; the New Year (n.)
---とも言います	-to-mo-imasu	(they) also call (it)...(it) is also called...; is also known as...*
さいご	saigo	last; final (n). "sai", a prefix indicating the superlative degree, and "go" (last). Cf., "saisho", see above)
さいごの月	saigo no tsuki	the last month
春	haru	spring (n.)
夏	natsu	summer (n.)
秋	aki	autumn; fall (n.)
冬	fuyu	winter (n.)
今月	kongatsu	this month; the present month (n.)
来月	raigatsu	next month; the coming month (n.)
来月は十一月です	raigatsu wa jūichi-gatsu desu	"Next month is November", or "Next month will be November." (The simple present form expresses either (1) present tense, or (2) definite future tense.)



昨晚	sakuban	last night (evening).*
先月	sengetsu	last month (n.).
旅行(りょこう)	ryokō	traveling; journey; trip (n.).
旅行する (りょこうする)	ryokō suru	to travel; (v.i.). (Cf., "sampo suru Les. 14, page 76.)
どこへ	doko e	to what place; (to) where (See "e", Lesson 18.)
日光(につこう)	Nikkō	Nikkō (name of a famous scenic spot in Japan) (p.n.).
今年	kotoshi (kon-nen)	this year; the present year (n.).*
何年	nan-nen	what year (n.); how many years (adv.). Cf., "nan-nichi."
千九百三十二年	sen ku-hyaku sanjuni-nen	1232 (note that "nen" is always suf- fixed to the numerals in naming a particular year.)
來年	rainen	next year; the coming year (n.).*
昨年	sakunen	last year; the previous year (n.).*
今週(今しゅう)	konshū	this week; the present week (n.).*
十三日	jūsan-nichi (jūsanchi)	the 13th (n.).
來週(來しゅう)	raishū	next week; the coming week (n.).*
十五日	jūgo-nichi (jūgonchi)	the 15th (n.).
先週	senshū	last week (n.).*
はい、します	hai, shimasu	"Yes, I am (going to study next week.)" Abbreviated form for "hai, benkyō shimasu."
習って居ますから (ならつて居ます から)	naratte imasu kara	because I am learning or studying. (Cf., "samui kara desu," Les. 15*; and "yasumi desu kara desu," Les. 18.)

# GRAMMATICAL NOTES

## Lesson 21 (Dai nijūikka)

### THIS, NEXT, LAST WEEK, MONTH, YEAR, ETC.

The method of forming the combination expressing "this, next, last week, month, year, etc.", is somewhat irregular, as shown in the following diagram:

	<u>KON</u> (this; to-)	<u>RAI</u> , or <u>MYŌ</u> (next)	<u>SEN</u> * or <u>SAKU</u> , or <u>KYO</u> (last; yester-)
"day"	KON-NICHI (KYŌ)	MYŌ-NICHI (ASHITA; ASU)	SAKU JITSU (KINŌ)
"morning"	KON-CHŌ (KESA)	MYŌ-CHŌ (MYŌ-ASA)	SAKU-CHŌ
"evening"	KON-BAN	MYŌ-BAN	SAKU-BAN
"night"	KON-YA		SAKU-YA
"week"	KON-SHŪ	RAI-SHŪ	SEN-SHŪ
"month"	KON-GETSU	RAI-GETSU	SEN-GETSU
"year"	KON-NEN (KOTOSHI)	RAI-NEN	SAKU-NEN KYO-NEN

\*SEN-JITSU means "the other day" and not "yesterday."

\*SEN-NEN means "some years ago," and not "last year."

### -MASHITA and -DESHITA: auxiliary verb suffixes indicating past tense

Historically speaking, Japanese verbs in their simple form have been neutral as to tense, but by the use of auxiliary verb suffixes, they expressed certainty or uncertainty, probability or improbability, possibility or impossibility, etc., of the existence, action, state or condition they described. (See GRAMMATICAL NOTES Lessons 1, 4, 8.)

In modern spoken Japanese, however, these suffixes have come to acquire tense-significance approaching that of English. Nevertheless, the ideas of certainty, probability, etc., frequently prevail over the time idea. For example, the past tense form can be interpreted as follows:

KI-MASHITA (one) came (simple past or imperfect)  
 (fam. KI-TA) (one) has or had come (present or past perfect)  
 (one) has or had been (here) (realized condition) (KITE IMASHITA)  
 \*Here he comes (condition about to be realized)  
 (KITA, KITA! Here he comes, here he comes!)

ARI-MASHITA there was (or were) (simple past or imperfect)  
 (fam. AT-TA) there has or had been (present or past perfect)  
 I (or we) found it (condition realized)  
 \*Here it is (I have found it) (condition just realized)

IKI-MASHITA (one) went (simple past or imperfect)  
 (fam. IT-TA) (one) has or had gone (present or past perfect)  
 (one) was (has or had been) (condition realized)  
 there)

Go on! Go away! (Imperative, when repeated in familiar form, cf., IKE)

Lesson 21

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

一、去年は何年でしたか。

二、今日は何曜日ですか。

三、あなたは今朝何時におきましたか。

四、朝はんに何時に食べましたか。

五、ゆうはんの前に今晚の新聞を讀みましたか。

六、日本語はやさしいんですか、むづかしいんですか。

七、あなたは昨晚早くやすみましたか。

八、來年は何年ですか。

九、今しゅうの土曜日は何日ですか。

十、あなたは今朝手紙を書きましたか。

十一、あなたは今朝何をなちつて居ますか。

十二、あなたは来七ゆうりよごうに出かけますか。

Lesson 21

Prepare the questions to the following answers:

一、新聞は朝はんの時に読みました。

二、私は今朝六時半におきました。

三、昨日少し散歩しました。

四、いゝえ、早くやすみました。

五、はい、勉強しました。

六、今は日本語をならつて居ますから出かけません。

七、昨日は九日でした。

八、日本語はむずかしいんです。

九、朝はんは七時二十五分に食べました。

十、来しゆうの月曜日是一日です。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 21

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. What did you read yesterday?
2. What time did you go to bed last night?
3. Did you study a little this morning? No, I didn't study at all.
4. How many hours did you study before supper? I studied only one hour.
5. Today is Wednesday, as yesterday was Tuesday.
6. We came here on July 5, 1947 and stayed about two months.
7. When I want to write a letter, I usually write it before supper.
8. I cannot go out for a walk because I am studying difficult characters now.
9. Since it rained a lot last week, I suppose the weather will improve this week.
10. I go to the mountains after the hot weather sets in and come back after it gets cooler.
11. The reason why many people go to the mountains, the seashore and the lake is that (those places) are cool.
12. It is better to read easy books a great deal than to read difficult books a little.
13. I'm going to study until about 12 o'clock tonight since I went to bed early last night.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 22 (Dai nijūni ka)

何ヶ月	nan-ka--getsu	how many months. Cf., "ka-getsu," Les. 20, page 117.
三十日	sanjū-nichi	thirty days (adv.); the 30th (n.). Cf., GRAMMATICAL NOTES, Les. 21.
毎	mai-	each; every (prefixed usually to adv. of time).
毎月	mai-tsuki (-getsu)	every month; each month (adv.).
ちがう	chigau	to be wrong; to be different ( <u>v.i.</u> )
ちがいます	chigaimasu	(it) is wrong or different (Cf., <u>Sō ja arimasen</u> in reply to questions ending in DESU KA.)
或	aru-	certain; some (a prefix).
或月	aru tsuki	certain months; some month (n.)
どの	dono	which; what (note the relationship between "kore/kono" and "dore/dono") See page 2.
どの月	dono tsuki	which month(s).
外の月は ---- ---- ありますか	hoka no tsuki wa ....arimasu ka	do the other months have thirty days? Note: (1) the absence of NI after "tsuki," which is a common practice; and (2) the absence of GA after "sanjū-nichi (adv.)" because the complete sentence is: ....(hi ga) sanjū-nichi arimasu ka."*
二十八日	nijūhachi-nichi (nijūhachinchi)	28 days (adv.); the 28th (n.).
毎年	mai-toshi (mai-nen)	every year; each year (adv.). (Cf., "mai-tsuki," above)
或年	aru toshi	some years; certain years (cf., "aru tsuki," above).
二月二十九日	ni-gatsu nijūka-nichi	February 29.

四年	yo-nen	four years (n.).
四年に一度ずつ	yo-nen ni ichi-do zutsu	once every four years. Lit., "one time each in four years." (Note the construction: (noun) + ni + (classifier) + zutsu.) (Cf., "-zutsu," Lesson 19.) *
名前を言う	namae wo iu	to name; to give the names. Lit., "to say the names."
はい、出来ます	hai, dekimasu	Yes, I can (name the days). (Cf., "hai, shimasu," Lesson 21.)
そんなら	son-nara	if so; in that case; if that is the case; then.*
一日	ichi-jitsu (tsuitachi)	the 1st (n.).
三十一日	sanjūichi-nichi (sanjūichinichi)	the 31st (n.).
じゆんに	jun ni	in order; in proper sequence. (adv.).
御	go-	honorific prefix used with words read in ON, (Chinese style).
言つて御らん なさい	itte goran nasai	just try naming (them)----: Let me see you name them. Cf., "akeite goran nasai," Lesson 11, G.N.
一日 ---- 三十一日	ichi-jitsu ---- sanjūichi-nichi	See GRAMMATICAL NOTES for pronunciations.*
二十日	hatsu-ka	the 20th (n.); 20 days (adv.)
さいしょの日	saisho no hi	the first day (n.).
---の次の日	---no tsugi no hi	the day after---; the day following--- (Lit. the day that comes next after ----.)
四日	yok-ka	the 4th (n.); four days (adv.).
八日	yō-ka	the 8th (n.); eight days (adv.).
おそい	osoi	slow; late; "comes later" (adj.) Cf., "hayai" (fast; early; "first" Lesson 20.)
昨日	kinō (sakujitsu)	yesterday (n.).
一昨日	ototoi (is-sakujitsu)	day before yesterday (n.).

船で	fune de	by boat (Cf., "me de," Lesson 6, "eigo de," Lesson 12, "ki de," Lesson 19 GRAMMATICAL NOTES.)
位	kurai (gurai)	about; approximately (with reference to duration of time.) (Cf., "goro," approximate point of time.)
かゝる	kakaru	to require (Lit., be required, as the verb is intransitive); take; need (with reference to time and money) (v.i.) (reg. verb).*
何日位かゝりますか	nan-nichi gurai kakarimasu ka	about how many days will it (the trip) take?
向島	Mukōjima	Mukōjima, a place in Tokyo (p.n.)
歩いて	aruite	on foot. Lit., "by walking." (Construction showing the use of the conjunctive form of verb as an adverb. Cf., "tsurete sampo suru," Lesson 14.)*
どの位	dono kurai (-gurai)	how long; how much; how far. Lit., "to what extent."
居る	oru	a somewhat more formal form of "iru" (to be, to exist) and used almost synonymously. Note, however, that "iru" is a <u>semi-regular verb</u> , while " <u>oru</u> " is a <u>regular verb</u> .
居りましたか	orimashita ka	have (you) been? (implying that he is no longer there); were (you)? Cf., "orimasuka," have (you) been? (implying that he is still present)



# GRAMMATICAL NOTES

## Lesson 22 (Dai nijūni-ka)

### THE DAYS OF THE MONTH

The method of counting the days of the month is somewhat irregular because it is medley of Japanese and Chinese pronunciations. The under-scored forms in the following table are those read in Japanese:

1st	ICHI-JITSU, ICHI-NICHI (ICHIN'CHI), TSUITACHI	19th	JŪKU-NICHI, JŪKUN'CHI
2nd	<u>FUTSU-KA</u>	20th	<u>HATSU-KA</u>
3rd	<u>MIK-KA</u>	21st	NIJŪICHI-NICHI, NIJŪICHIN'CHI
4th	<u>YOK-KA</u>	22nd	NIJŪNI-NICHI, NIJŪNIN'CHI
5th	<u>ITSU-KA</u>	23rd	NIJŪSAN-NICHI, NIJŪSAN'CHI
6th	<u>YUI-KA</u>	23rd	NIJŪSAN NICHI,
7th	<u>NANU-KA</u> , <u>NANO-KA</u>	24th	<u>NIJŪYOK-KA</u>
8th	<u>YO(O)-KA</u>	25th	NIJŪGO-NICHI, NIJŪGON'CHI
9th	<u>KOKONO-KA</u>	26th	NIJŪROKU-NICHI, NIJŪROKUN'CHI
10th	<u>TO(O)-KA</u>	27th	NIJŪSHICHI-NICHI, NIJŪSHICHIN'CHI
11th	JŪICHI-NICHI, JŪICHIN'CHI	28th	NIJŪHACHI-NICHI, NIJŪHACHIN'CHI
12th	JŪNI-NICHI, JŪNIN'CHI	29th	NIJŪKU-NICHI, NIJŪKUN'CHI
13th	JŪSAN NICHI, JŪSAN'CHI	30th	SANJŪ-NICHI
14th	<u>JŪYOK-KA</u>	31st	SANJŪICHI-NICHI, SANJŪICHIN'CHI
15th	JŪGO-NICHI, JŪGON'CHI		
16th	JŪROKU NICHI, JŪROKUN'CHI		
17th	JŪSHICHI-NICHI, JŪSHICHIN'CHI		
18th	JŪHACHI-NICHI, JŪHACHIN'CHI		

With the exception of TSUITACHI, "first day of the month," the forms in the above table can be used as cardinals, i.e., "one day," "two days," "three days," etc.

By the same token NAN-NICHI, IKU-NICHI, IK-KA can mean either "what day of the month," or "how many days."

### HOKA NO TSUKI (NI) WA MINA SANJŪ-NICHI ARIMASU KA

Observe that the particle NI is not used in this construction (See G.N., Lesson 5, ----GA----NI----ARIMASU). NI may be omitted to render the phrase HOKA NO TSUKI absolute, that is, to introduce the sharper break between the subject part of the sentence and the predicate part.

HOKA NO TSUKI WA MINA SANJŪ-NICHI ARIMASU KA, therefore, may be translated, "As for the other months, are there thirty days in all of them?" or "As for the other months, do they all have thirty days?" The sentence HOKA NO TSUKI NI WA MINA SANJŪ-NICHI ARIMASU KA, then, may be translated, "Are there thirty days in all the other months?" or "Do all the other months have thirty days?"

In other words, the sentence with the particle NI before WA is a closely knit sentence; and the sentence without the particle NI before WA is a sharply divided sentence.

### YO-NEN NI ICHI-DO (ZUTSU)

YO-NEN NI ICHI-DO means "once in four years." Frequently, ZUTSU, "each," is joined to this phrase, i.e., YO-NEN NI ICHI-DO ZUTSU, which may be translated, "once in every four years."

ICHI-NICHI NI NI-DO (ZUTSU)	twice a (every) day
IS-SHŪAN NI YO-DO (ZUTSU)	four times a (every) day
NI-KAGETSU NI KU-DO (ZUTSU)	nine times a (every) month

### SONNARA -- SŌ NARA (BA)

SONNARA, which means "if that is so," or "well then"; and it is the corrupt form of SŌ NARA, which in turn is the shortened form of SŌ NARABA. NARABA means "if it be." When NARABA is used as an auxiliary verb suffix it simply means "if." Therefore, both NARA and NARABA can be regarded as equivalent to DE AREBA, the conditional form of DE ARU or DA. See the following table of conjugation.

	<u>Polite</u>		<u>Familiar</u>	
Present tense	DE ARIMASU	DESU	DE ARU	DA
Past tense	DE ARIMASHITA	DESHITA	DE ATTA	DATTA
Conjunctive	DE ARIMASHITE	DESHITE	DE ATTE	DE
Conjectural	DE ARIMASHŌ	DESHŌ	DE ARŌ	DARŌ
Conditional	DE ARIMASUREBA		DE AREBA	NARA(BA)

NARA, the conditional stem of DA, is used with conditional meaning after nouns and after the present and past forms of verbs and adjectives. The corresponding form of the quasi-adjectives is conditional. NARABA

may be used in place of NARA. The form MOSHI may come at the head of a conditional clause.

AMERIKA KARA NIHON MADE FUNE DE NAN-NICHI KURAI KAKARIMASU KA

KAKARIMASU means "to require or take (time or money)." Therefore, AMERIKA KARA NIHON MADE FUNE DE NAN-NICHI KURAI KAKARIMASU KA means "About how many days will it require (to go) from America (U.S.A.) to Japan by boat?"

ANATA WA NIHON NI NAN-KA-GETSU ORIMASHITA KA  
MÔ SAN-KA-GETSU ORIMASHITA

ANATA WA NIHON NI NAN-KA-GETSU ORIMASHITA KA means "How many months were you in Japan?" The verb ORIMASHITA, in the past tense, implies that the person is no longer at the place in question. (See G.N., Lesson 21, -MASHITA and -DESHITA.)

MÔ SAN-KA-GETSU ORIMASHITA means "I had already been there three months." Therefore, this is not a proper form of answer to the question ANATA WA NIHON NI NAN-KA-GETSU ORIMASHITA KA. The proper answer would be SAN-KA-GETSU ORIMASHITA (I was there three months.) In other words the adverb MÔ should be omitted.

If the person is still residing in the place named, the question should be ANATA WA (MÔ) NIHON NI NAN-KA-GETSU ORIMASU KA, and the answer would be IÔ SAN-KA-GETSU ORIMASU.

#### ARUITE and FUNE DE

Verbs in the conjunctive (-TE or -DE) form frequently serve as adverbs of manner. E.g.,

ARUITE	on foot; by walking
FUNE DE	by (means of) boat
JIDÔSHA DE	by (means of) automobile



Lesson 22

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

一、一年には何週間ありますか。

二、どの月に三十日ありますか。

三、明後日は何曜日ですか。

四、一昨日は何日でしたか。

五、あなたは此のがつこうに何ヶ月居りますか。

六、アメリカから日本まで船で何日位かかりますか。

七、ここからシカゴまで汽車で何時間位かかりますか。

八、月のさいしょの日は何と言いますか。

九、二月には毎年二十八日しかありませんか。

十、一ヶ月には約何日ありますか。

十一、あなたはいつごろ日本へ行きますか。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 22

Translate the following sentences into Japanese:

1. There are 365 days, 5 hours, 48 minutes, and 46 seconds in one year.
2. Once in how many years does February 29 come around?
3. How many characters per day do you learn?
4. Usually I learn about 10 a day, but some days I learn only about three.
5. Can you give (say) the names of the days in order from the first day of the month to the last (day)? Yes, I can. Well then, try giving them (say them).
6. About how many days does it take for a letter from America to (reach) London by ship?
7. Do you speak in English while you are eating your lunch? No I speak only in Japanese.
8. Which takes more money, to travel by train or (to travel) by car?
9. We have 5-day vacations four times a year in our school.
10. It will probably take from 2 hours to about 2 and half hours if you walk from here to Mukōjima.
11. If you go to school 5 times a (per) week, how many times will you go in a year?
12. Mr. Yamamoto came here at the end of June of last year, and returned to London at the beginning of May of this year; so he stayed here only 10 months.
13. At what time do you get up everyday, how many hours do you study, and at what time do you retire?
14. There are two holidays this month besides Sundays.
15. I walk when it does not matter whether I'm late, but when I want to get (there) early, I go on a bicycle.

16. Why is it easy to write the names of the days, but difficult to read them?
17. Which months have 31 days?
18. I walk to Mukōjima every morning before breakfast and return at 5 minutes to 7.
19. In what year did you go to Japan? And how many years were you in Japan?
20. If you learn 20 characters per day, you can learn 7,300 in a year.

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 22

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. How many years were you in Chicago?
2. About how many days did it take from here to New York?
3. I eat fish twice every month.
4. One day Mrs. Roseling came.
5. Once I walked to that lake over there.
6. Which paper do you read every morning?
7. Which book is the most difficult?
8. About how long does it take from here to San Francisco by car?
9. The road to Alaska (was) opened on the first.
10. I didn't know about it up to the last day.
11. Is today the 4th or the 8th?
12. Yesterday was the 7th; so, tomorrow is the 9th.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 23 (Dai nijūsan ka)

ちず	chizu	map (n.)
國	kuni	country (n.)
米國	Peikoku	the United States of America; America (p.n.)
九州	Kyūshū	Kyūshū (one of the four main islands of Japan proper) (p.n.)
四國	Shikoku	Shikoku (one of the four main islands of Japan proper) (p.n.)
南	minami	south (n.)
.. の南に あります	---no minami ni arimasu	(it) is situated (or located) to the south of---; (it) lies to the south of---.
北海道	Hokkaidō (all in Chinese reading)	Hokkaidō (one of the four main islands of Japan proper) (p.n.)
東	higashi (Japanese reading)	east (n.)
北	kita (Japanese reading)	north (n.)
東北	higashi-kita (tō-noku)	north-east (n.)*
あたたか	atataka	warm (n.) (an example of the root of true adjective used as a noun equivalent)
中々	naka-naka	very (adv.)
寒い	sumui	cold (adj.) See Lesson 15.
あんまり	an-mari	very (much); too; so (much) (when used with a negative predicate) (adv.)
あんまりふり ません	an-mari furimasen	(it) doesn't rain so (very) much.



東京	Tōkyō	Tōkyō (p.n.)
首府(しゆふ)	shufu	capital of a nation (n.)
ロンドン	Rondon	London (p.n.)
英國	Eikoku	England (p.n.)
ワシントン	Washinton	Washington (p.n.)
支那(しな)	Shina	China (p.n.)
大きな	ōki na	large (adj.) (an example of an adjective formed by the use of "na" with the root of true adjective.)
西	nishi	west (n.)
ずっと	zutto	by far; much (when used in comparing things) (adv.)
大陸(たいりく)	tairiku	continent (n.)
部(ぶ)	bu	part; portion; section (n.)
一部(いぶ)	ichi-bu	one part; a part (n.)
島國	shimaguni	island country; insular nation(n.)
フランス	Furansu	France (p.n.)
アジア	Ajiya	Asia (p.n.)
ヨーロッパ	Yōroppa	Europe (p.n.)
アフリカ	Afurika	Africa (p.n.)
南アメリカ	Minami Amerika	South America (p.n.)
北アメリカ	Kita Amerika	North America (p.n.)
オーストラリア	Ōsutorariya	Australia (p.n.)
日本で ---- 話します	Nihon de ---- hanashimasu	in Japan ---- (they) speak. (DE indicates the place where the action is performed.)*
かなり(かなり)	kanari	considerably; fairly; somewhat (adv.) Cf., "kanari" Les. 14.

にる	niru	to be similar; resemble (v.i.) (semi-reg.) Used with post-position NI. Progressive form is used to denote the present indicative. (Cf., similar instances -CHIGAU, etc.)
丸で	maru de	quite; completely; entirely; altogether; (adv.)
ちがう	chigau	to be unlike; differ; be different (from) (v.i.) (Usually used with pp. TO) Cf., "chigaimasu." Lesson 22.
國語	kokugo	national (native) language (n.)
支那語	Shinago	Chinese language (n.) Cf., "Nihongo", Lesson 7.
少し(は)	sukoshi (wa)	some; a little; (adv.) With WA it implies some <u>if not a great deal</u> . Cf., "sukoshi", Les. 21.
分る	wakaru	to understand; comprehend; can understand (v.i.) ((an example of an intransitive verb (Lit., "to be comprehended.") which is usually translated as a transitive verb in English)) (reg. verb).
支那語が分りますか	Shinago ga wakarimasu ka	do (or can you) understand Chinese? Lit., "Is Chinese understandable?"
ちっと	chitto	a bit; a little (Syn., <u>sukoshi</u> ) (n.)
ちっとも	chittomo	not even a little; not at all (always used with negative verb).
いつも	itsu mo	always; all the time; at all times (adv.).
何語	nanigo	what language?
けっして	kesshite	never; on no occasion (always used with negative verb). An adverbial emphasizer of the negative.

いえ	ie	yes ( <u>Cf.</u> , Lesson 16 G.N. Les. 1).
度々	tabi-tabi	often; repeatedly; frequently (adv) time and time again.
と	to	with; (together) with. <u>Cf.</u> , "to" (and), Les. 5. (TO <u>to</u> indicates accompaniment.)
誰と	dare to	with whom?
先生	sensei	teacher (n.). See Les. 13 G.N.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 23 (Dai nijūsan-ka)

#### BEIKOKU NO SHUFU WA DOKO DESU KA

DOKO, as the characters will indicate, means "what place." Therefore, BEIKOKU NO SHUFU WA DOKO DESU KA, means "As for the capital of (the United States of) America, what place is it?" or more idiomatically "Where is the capital of America?"

#### NITE-IMASU and CHIGATTE-IMASU

NITE-IMASU, "to resemble," and CHIGATTE-IMASU, "to differ," like the verb SHITTE-IMASU (See G.N. Lesson 11; Vocabulary, Lesson 20), are put in the progressive form to express the present tense, because they describe the persisting state.

There are several ways to express the idea of similarity or dissimilarity. E.g.,

EIGO TO SHINAGO WA NITE-IMASU

(A)-TO-(B)-WA NITE-IMASU

EIGO WA SHINAGO NI NITE-IMASU

(A)-WA-(B)-NI NITE-IMASU

EIGO TO SHINAGO WA NITE WA IMASEN

(A)-TO-(B)-WA NITE WA IMASEN

EIGO WA SHINAGO NI NITE WA IMASEN

(A)-WA-(B)-NI NITE WA IMASEN

NIHONGO TO SHINAGO WA CHIGATTE-IMASU

(A)-TO-(B)-WA CHIGATTE-IMASU

NIHONGO WA SHINAGO TO CHIGATTE-IMASU

(A)-WA-(B)-TO CHIGATTE-IMASU

NIHONGO TO SHINAGO WA CHIGATTE WA IMASEN

(A)-TO-(B)-WA CHIGATTE WA IMASEN

NIHONGO WA SHINAGO TO CHIGATTE WA IMASEN

(A)-WA-(B)-TO CHIGATTE WA IMASEN

Observe that the particle NI is used with NITE-IMASU and that the particle TO is used with CHIGATTE-IMASU. NI corresponds to the preposition "to" in the phrase "similar to," and TO corresponds to the preposition "from" in the phrase "differ from."

#### Directions

In mentioning the four quarters, or the four cardinal points, in Japanese, the order is somewhat different from that in English. The order in Japanese is HIGASHI, "east"; NISHI, "west"; MINAMI, "south"; KITA, "north." That is to say, "south" is mentioned before "north."

The combinations such as "northeast," "southeast," "northwest," and "southwest" are inverted. E.g., HIGASHI-KITA or TŌ-HOKU (east-north), HIGASHI-MINAMI or TŌ-NAN (east-south), NISHI-KITA or SEI-HOKU (west-north), NISHI-MINAMI or SEI-NAN (west-south).

In navigation, however, these combinations are given in the English order and read in Chinese, e.g., HOKU-TŌ, "northeast;" NAN-TŌ, "southeast;" HOKU-SEI, "northwest;" NAN-SEI, "southwest."



CHITTOMO and KESSHITE

The adverbs CHITTOMO, "even a little," or "at all;" and KESSHITE, "never" are always construed with a negative predicate. E.g.,

CHITTOMO WAKARIMASEN

"(I) cannot understand it at all."

KESSHITE HANASHIMASEN

"(I) never speak (say or tell it)."

Translate the following into English:

- 一、米國も日本も國です。
- 二、ちずがなければこくばんに日本のちずをかいて下さい。
- 三、本しゅうは日本で一番大きい島です。
- 四、北海道は中々寒いんです。四國は可なりあたたかいんです。
- 五、九しゅうではさくらの花が早く咲きます。
- 六、米國は大きな國で大きい海と海の間にあります。
- 七、支那と英國ではどつちが大きいんですか。
- 八、米國では英語を話しますが日本では日本語を話します。
- 九、英語と日本語ではどちらがむづかしいんですか。
- 十、英語は日本語ににて居ますか。
- 十一、あなたにはお金が少しもありませんか。
- 十二、あなたにはお金が少しはありますか。
- 十三、あなたにはお金が少ししかありませんか。

(the

(

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 23

Translate the following sentences into Japanese:

1. What he says and what he does are entirely different.
2. Judging from his Japanese, he is quite like a Japanese.
3. There is very little similarity between Japanese and Chinese.
4. There are no flowers at all at the summit of the mountain.
5. Those two KANJI closely resemble each other.
6. I didn't know anything about it.
7. This cat never eats fish.
8. I never go to bed earlier than 11 o'clock.
9. The teacher always says, "It's wrong."
10. In winter, Monterey is the best place in America.
11. It's much warmer today than yesterday.
12. Los Angeles is south of San Francisco.

Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

Lesson 23

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. What country did the one who is now speaking with that old man come from?
2. In Tokyo the winters are very cold, but it does not snow very much.
3. Since Hokkaidō is north of Honshū, it snows a great deal in the winter, but since Shikoku and Kyūshū are southwest of Honshū it does not snow very much.
4. The island called Okinawa is between Kyūshū and Formosa.
5. English and French are quite similar, but English and Japanese are not at all alike.
6. Do you always speak in Japanese when you speak with your Japanese language instructor? No, I usually speak in Japanese, but at times I speak in English.
7. That student always speaks Japanese with his teacher, but always speaks English with students.
8. These birds come from the south when it gets warm, and return to the south when it gets cold.
9. Japan is an island country and there is a large ocean to the east of it.
10. Which is colder, when it is snowing or when it is raining?



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 24 (Dai nijūshi ka)

何か	nani ka	something (or other); anything (n.)*
切る	kiru	to cut (v.t.) (reg. verb). Assimilated conj. form: kitte.
ナイフ か はさみ (か) を	naifu ka hasami(ka) (wo)	either a knife or a pair of scissors. Cf., "----desu ka, ----ka." Lesson 2.*
使ふ	tsukau	to use (v.t.) (reg. verb). Assimilated conj. form: tsukatte.
使わなければ なりません	tsukawanakereba narimasen	(one) must use. Lit., "If one does not use, it will not be."*
買う	kau	to buy (v.t.) (reg. verb). Assimilated conj. form: katte.
店	mise	store; shop (n.)
本屋	hon-ya	bookstore (n.)
本屋で----- 賣りますか	hon-ya de ---- urimasu ka	at the bookstore, do (they) sell----. Cf., "Nihon de wa ---- hanashi- masu." Lesson 23.*
賣る	uru	to sell (v.t.) (reg. verb). Assimilated conj. form: utte.
ざつし	zasshi	magazine; periodical (n.).
本を買う時には	hon wo kau toki ni wa	when one buys a book. Lit., "at the time when one buys a book." See Lesson 14, G.N., ARUITE IRU NO WA.
はらう	harau	to pay (v.t.) (reg. verb) Imperfective stem: harawa-; Assimilated conj. form: haratte.
切手	kitte	stamp (postage) (n.)
出す	dasu	to send, to put or take out; mail (when used with letters, post cards, etc.) (v.t.) (reg. v.) Conj. form: dashite. Cf., deru, (v.i.)

ゆうびんきょく	yūbinkyoku	post office (n.)
近所	kinjo	neighborhood; vicinity (n.)
八百屋	yaoya	vegetable store; green-grocer's (shop) (n.) Cf., HON-YA, above.
やさい	yasai	vegetable (n.)
水菓子屋	mizugashiya	fruit store (n.) Cf., HON-YA, above.
くだもの	kudamono	fruit (n.)
りんご	ringo	apple (n.)
桃	momo	peach (n.)
なし	na'shi	pear (n.)
いちご	ichigo	strawberry (n.)
かき	kaki	persimmon (n.)
みかん	mikan	mandarin; orange (n.)
ぶどう	budō	grape (n.)
バナナ	banana	banana (n.)
など	nādo	etc.; and the like; and such.*
じゃがいも	jagaimo	potato (n.) From "jagataraimo." "Jagatara," corrupt form of "Jacatra," the former name of Batavia, Java. (Cf., "Idaho Potatoes.")
にんじん	ninjin	carrot (n.)
な (おな)	na (o-na)	greens (n.)
かぶ	kabu	turnip (n.)
ほうれんそう	hōrensō	spinach (n.)
いんげん	ingen	kidney-bean (n.)
生 (なま)	nāma	raw or uncooked (n.)

で	de	particle joined to nouns to form adverbial phrase indicating a particular state or condition. Cf., use of conjunctive form of verbs as adverb of manner "tsurete sampo suru," Les. 14; and "aruite," Lesson 22.
生で	náma de	raw, uncooked (adv.)
にる	nirú	to boil (used, not water); cook (v.i.) (semi-reg.)
生で食べる	náma de taberu	to eat (a thing) raw.
(にて食べる)	(nité taberu)	to eat (a thing) cooked
どんな時	donna toki	when (under what circumstances). Cf., ITSU.
のみたくなる	nonítaku naru	to want to drink. Lit., "become desirous of drinking." Cf., "atsuku narimasu," Lesson 20.*
かわく	kawaku	to dry; be dry (v.i.) (reg. verb)
のど	nódo	throat (n.)
のどがかわく	nódo-ga-kawaku	to become thirsty (v.i.)
かわいた	kawaita	abrupt or familiar past tense form of "kawaku"*
ーた	-ta	indicates the past or perfect tense. It also may indicate the persisting state or condition (----- -te iru, see G.N. Lesson 4, page 17).
のどがかわいた時	nódo-ga-kawaita toki	when one is thirsty. Lit., "When the throat has become dry."*
おなか	onaka	stomach (n.)
すく	sukú	to become empty; become vacant (v.i.) (reg. verb)
おなかがすく	onaka-ga-sukú	to become hungry.

おなかがすいた	onaka-ga-suita' toki	when one is hungry. Lit., "When the stomach has become empty."
ごはん	gohan	boiled rice; a meal (n.)
ごはんが食べたい	gohan ga tabetai	to want to eat (a meal)
おなかがすかない	onaka-ga-sukanai	not to get or to be hungry. The familiar negative present-future form of "onaka ga suku."
はい	hai	numerical classifier for filled vessels and containers such as glasses, cups, buckets, tubs, etc.
水を一ぱい	mizu wo ip-pai	one (cup) of water; a (glass or glassful) of water.



## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 24

#### NANIKA

After many of the interrogative pronouns, the particle KA converts the interrogative into the corresponding indefinite pronouns or adverbs. E.g.,

NANIKA.....Something or other.  
DOREKA.....One or the other, some one thing.  
DOCHIRAKA.....One or the other.  
DOTCHIKA.....One or the other.  
DOKOKA.....Somewhere or other.  
DAREKA.....Somebody or other.  
ITSUKA.....Sometime or other.  
IKUTSUKA.....Some quantity or other.

When NANIKA is used, it may take the place of a case particle.

NAIFU KA KASAMI means "(a) knife or (a pair of) scissors." When the particle KA is placed between or after each of nouns or pronouns, it means "or." E.g.,

ANATA KA WATAKUSHI....."You or I."

#### Imperfective base-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN

The "must" of necessity, i.e., "one (or it) has to," is expressed by the double negative -NAKEREBBA+NARIMASEN, which is joined to the imperfective base of verbs, or the conj-adverbial case of true adjectives, or to (noun or pronoun)+DE-. E.g.,

Verb:	TSUKAWA-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"one must use"
	IKU-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"one must go"
	I-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"one must stay"
Adjective:	OKIKU-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"it must be large"
	NAGAKU-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"it must be long"
	YASUKU-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"it must be inexpensive"
Noun:	O-KANE-DE-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"it must be in money"
	NIHONGO-DE-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"it must be in Japanese"
Pronoun:	ANATA-DE-NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN	"it must (has to) be you"
	KORE DE NAKEREBBA NARIMASEN	"it has to be this one (and nothing else)"

However, since NAKEREBBA is the conditional form (see Lesson 16, G.N.) of NAI, which is the negative of ARU, the noun preceding the phrase can be the subject, e.g., O-KANE GA NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN, "one must (has to) have money."

NAKUTE-WA is also the weak conditional form of NAI (see G.N. pages 71 and 90), therefore, NAKUTE WA can be substituted for NAKEREBBA. E.g., IKA-NAKUTE-WA-NARIMASEN, "one must go."

IKEMASEN is synonymous with NARIMASEN (see G.N. page 71), for this reason, IKEMASEN is frequently substituted for NARIMASEN. E.g., ANATA WA KO-NAKEREBBA-IKEMASEN, "you must come"; IMA SHI-NAKEREBBA-IKEMASEN, "one must do it now."

If one were to force the distinction in meaning between these two phrases, it can be said that the phrase NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN approaches the English phrase "one (or it) has to"; and NAKUTE-WA-IKEMASEN, "one (or it) must." In other words, NAKEREBBA-NARIMASEN suggests the compulsion of necessity, that is, the decision is not left to the agent or the person involved.

#### DE: locative particle of action

HON-YA DE WA HANI WO URIMASU KA means "What do they sell at the book-store?" -YA is a noun suffix indicating the place or person that deals in the commodity or that operates the business suggested by the noun preceding it. E.g., HON-YA, "a book-store or book-dealer," SAKANA-YA "fish market," or "fish vendor."

DE is a particle denoting the place where the action is performed.

WA sets off the phrase HON-YA DE, about which the question HANI WO URIMASU KA is asked. WA is used to set off or single out a word, phrase, or clause to distinguish the idea represented by it from other possible ideas of the same category. (See page 3.)

URIMASU (or URU), the simple form, is used because the question is general.

If the question applies to a concrete situation, the progressive form may be used. E.g., SANSEI-DÔ DE WA JIRIKI WO UTTE IMASU KA, "Do they have dictionaries on sale at SANSEI-DÔ (Book) Co?"

#### NADO

NADO, following a substantive, phrase or clause, conveys the idea "such a thing (place, person, etc.) as." E.g.,

HON, EMPITSU, KAMI NADO GA TSUKUE NO UE NI ARIMASU.

"There are such things as books, pencils, paper, etc."

HIKÔKI NI NADO NOTTE WA IJEMASEN.

"Please do not ride in such a thing as an airplane."

MIZU GA NOMITAKU NARIMASU  
MIZU WO NOMITAKU NARIMASU

Both MIZU GA NOMITAKU NARIMASU and MIZU WO NOMITAKU NARIMASU are accepted as correct forms. However, GA seems to emphasize the noun (or



pronoun) it follows and links it closer to the desiderative suffix -TAI, while WO seems to link it more closely to the transitive verb NOMU (i.e., NOMI-).

### -TAI and -NAI: inflective suffixes

Both the desiderative suffix -TAI (conjunctive base suffix) and the negative suffix -NAI (imperfective base suffix) are subject to inflection. The suffixes are inflected exactly like true adjectives, (Lesson 17, SHIRI-TAI). E.g.,

Present or future tense:	NOMI-TAI (Attributive or predicative)
Present or future tense:	NOMI-TAI N' DESU (Predicative, polite, emphatic)
[(Conjunctive--Coordinate)	NOMI-TAKU (Adverbial)]
Conjunctive (-TE) form:	NOMI-TAKUTE (Coordinate or subordinate)
Concessive mood:	NOMI-TAKUTE-MO
Absolute (Adv. phrase):	NOMI-TAKUTE-WA
Conditional mood:	NOMI-TAKEREBBA
Negative mood:	NOMI-TAKU (WA) ARIMASEN
Present or future tense:	SUKA-NAI (Attributive or predicative)
Present or future tense:	SUKA-NAI N' DESU (Predicative, polite, emphatic)
[(Conjunctive form:	SUKA-NAKU (Adverbial)]
Conjunctive (-TE) form:	SUKA-NAKUTE (Coordinate or subordinate)
Concessive mood:	SUKA-NAKUTE-MO
Absolute (Adv. phrase)	SUKA-NAKUTE-WA
Conditional mood:	SUKA-NAKEREBBA

NODO GA KAWAITA TOKI and NODO GA KAWAITE-IRU TOKI  
O-NAKA GA SUITA TOKI and O-NAKA GA SUITE-IRU TOKI

Both NODO GA KAWAITA TOKI and NODO GA KAWAITE IRU TOKI describe the state or condition and mean "when one is thirsty" (Lit., "when the throat is dry"). Similarly, O-NAKA GA SUITA TOKI and O-NAKA GA SUITE IRU TOKI mean "when one is hungry" (Lit., "when the inside is empty"). However, the suffix -TA makes the condition more definitive. In other words, -TE-IRU TOKI means "when the condition of ---- obtains;" whereas -TA TOKI means "once the condition of ---- is realized."

KAWAITA and SUITA are the familiar forms of KAWAKI-MASHITA and SUKI-MASHITA, respectively.

To form the familiar past tense simply join -TA or -DA to the same base to which the conjunctive suffix, i.e., TE or DE is joined, making allowance for the phonetic changes in case of the regular verbs, (See GRAMMATICAL NOTES Lesson 4, the -TE form.)

E.g.,

<u>Regular verbs:</u>	<u>Conclusive (abrupt) base</u>	<u>Conjunctive (TE) forms</u>	<u>Familiar past forms</u>
"to read"	YOMU	YONDE	YON-DA
"to call"	YOBU	YONDE	YON-DA
"to die"	SHINU	SHINDE	SHIN-DA
"to swim"	OYOGU	OYOIDE	OYOI-DA
"to walk"	ARUKU	ARUITE	ARUI-TA
"to go"	IKU	ITTE*	IT-TA*
"to tell, say"	IU	ITTE	IT-TA
"to buy"	KAU	KATTE	KAT-TA
"to inhale"	SUU	SUTTE	SUT-TA
"to stand"	TATSU	TATTE	TAT-TA
"to sell"	URU	UTTE	UT-TA
"to know"	SHIRU	SHITTE	SHIT-TA
"to return"	KAERU	KAETTE	KAET-TA
"to put or let out"	DASU	DASHITE*	DASHI-TA*

\* Exceptional forms.

Semi-regular verbs:

"to see"	MIRU	MITE	MI-TA
"to open"	AKERU	AKETE	AKE-TA

Irregular verbs:

"to come"	KURU	KITE	KI-TA
"to do"	SURU	SHITE	SHI-TA



Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

一、もし紙を切りたい時には何を使はなければなりませんか。

二、もし桃を買いいたい時にはどこへ行かなければなりませんか。

三、切手がなければ何をすることが出来ませんか。

四、本屋では何を買いますか。

五、あなたは魚をなまで食べることが出来ますか。

六、どんな時に水がのみたくなりますか。

七、やさいをかう時には何をばらわなければなりませんか。

八、あなたは今ごはんが食べたいんですか。

九、切手を買いたい時にはどこへ行きますか。

十、なぜ水がのみたいんですか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 24

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. I have to go to Tokyo on the 3:00 P.M. train next Monday.
2. Even if I see other students eating fish raw, I don't want to.
3. Please open either the door or windows because it's hot.
4. Since there was no knife, I had to use scissors.
5. One does not want to eat when one is not hungry.
6. This store sells various things besides vegetables and fruits.
7. When I see good books I always want to buy them.
8. We don't want to drink water when we are not thirsty.
9. One does not have to go to a post office when he wants to send a letter.
10. To what kind of stores do we have to go when we want to buy newspapers and magazines and the like.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 25 (Dai nijūgo ka)

何冊	nan-satsu	how many copies (or volumes). Cf., "iku-satsu," Lesson 8.
四冊	shi-satsu (yon-satsu)	four copies (or volumes)
左の上の本	hidari no ue no hon	upper left-hand book; the book which is in the upper left part (of the picture).
厚い	atsui	thick (adj.)
その下の	sono shita no	(the) one below (under) it.
うすい	usui	thin (adj.)
はさ	haba	width (n.)
広い	hiroi	wide; spacious; large (adj.)
はさが広い	haba-ga-hiroi	wide*
けれども	keredomo	however, but. Cf., Lesson 15.
せまい	semai	narrow; cramped; small (adj.)
はさがせまい	haba-ga-semai	narrow*
ページ	pēji	page (n.)
沢山	takusan	large quantity (adv.)
時々	toki ni wa	at times; sometimes; upon occasion.
なら	nara	if (it is) (the conditional stem of DA)*
ポケット	poketto	pocket (n.)
入れる	ireru	to put in or into (v.t.) (semi-reg.)
ポケットの中へ (に) 入れる	poketto no naka e (or ni) ireru	to put into the pocket.

持つて歩く	motte aruku	to carry (around or about). Cf., "tsurete sampo suru", Les. 14.
べんり	benri	convenient (n.)
ふべん	fuben	inconvenient (n.)
持つて居ますか	motte imasu ka	does one have (possess or own)? Cf., "motte imasu", Les. 16
何に	nani ni	for what (purpose)? (The particle NI indicates the purpose of action).
何故	naze	why?
あんまり	ammari	too; very (used with either affirmative or negative predicate) (adv.) Cf., "ammari furimasen" Les. 23. <u>Ammari</u> is the emphatic form of <u>Amari</u> (originally a noun meaning "superabundance.")
言葉	kotoba	word (spoken) Cf., "ji" (characters; written symbols)
多い	ōi	many (adj.)
あんまり多いから です	ammari ōi kara desu	because there are too many
やさしいのなら	yasashii no nara	if it is an easy one (word)
おもい	omoi	heavy (adj.)
はんたい	hantai	opposite; opposition (n.)
かるい	karui	light (not heavy) (adj.)
来て下さい	kite kudasai	please come
何ですか言つて 下さい	nan desu ka itte kudasai	please tell me what it is (standard pattern for indirect questions)
来ないで下さい	konnai de kudasai	please don't come.
それでは	sore de wa	then; in that case; if so; if that is the case (note DE, the conjunctive form of DESU, with its " <u>-ing</u> " flavor-- "(its) <u>being</u> that---.")



そうじ	sōji	cleaning; sweeping; dusting (n.)
そうじをして 下さい	sōji wo shite kudasai	please clean ( <u>but</u> , this becomes "----- wo sōji shite kudasai" when another object is in- volved. See SENTAKU WO SU- RU, G.N. Les. 13.)
おしえて下さい	oshiete kudasai	please tell (teach; inform) me
しないで下さい	shi-naide kudasai	please don't do*

## GRAMMATICA NOTES

### Lesson 25 (Dai nijūgo ka)

#### KONO HON WA HABA GA HIROI

KONO HON WA HABA GA HIROI literally means "as for this book, it is wide in width." More freely, it means "This book is wide." Therefore, the clause HABA GA HIROI can be considered as the predicate adjective. However, when this phrase is used attributively, the particle NO is substituted for GA. E.g.,

HABA NO HIROI HON.....wide book.  
ME NO CHIKAI HITO.....near-sighted person

(Note: All true adjectives have the notion of "to be." Therefore, they may conclude the clauses or sentences.)

Note the construction of the above-described clause:

HABA GA(NO) HIROI  
Noun + GA(NO) + true adjective

#### NARA

NARA, the conditional stem of DA, is used with conditional meaning after substantives and any uninflected word. E.g.,

HON NARA....."if it is a book."  
ANATA NARA....."if it is or were you."  
MIDORI NARA....."if it is green."

NARA is also joined to predicate adjectives in the present as well as the past tense form, in which case it means "if it is (should be) or were." E.g.,

TAKAI NARA....."if it is high."  
ŌKIKATTA NARA....."if it is (should be) or  
were big."

A predicate verb in the present or past tense may also be followed by NARA. E.g.,

IKU NARA....."if one is going."  
ITTA NARA....."if one had gone."

Conclusive-Attributive base + NONI

The particle NONI is placed after verbs of action or motion in the present tense to express purpose, corresponding to the phrase "for the purpose of" (NO-TAME-NI), "in order to," "for," or "in -----ing."

KORE WA MOTTE ARUKU NONI BENRI DESU

"This is convenient for carrying (around)."

JIBIKI WA KOTOBA NO IMI WO SHIRU NONI TSUKAIMASU

"Dictionaries are used in learning the meaning of words."

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

- 一、厚い本は大ていページが少いんですか。
- 二、大きい字引は待つて歩くのにふべんですか。
- 三、やさいは皆になければ食べることが出来ませんか。
- 四、字引は大ていうすいんですか。
- 五、どんな字引ならポケットの中に入れることが出来ますか。
- 六、字引は何に使いますか。
- 七、「おもい」のはんたいは何ですか。
- 八、「ふべん」のはんたいは何ですか。
- 九、やさしい言葉ならいくつぐらい知つて居ますか。
- 十、「新聞を讀んで下さい」のはんたいは何ですか。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 25

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Although this book is thin, it has many pages because the paper is thin.
2. Since this room is narrow one can put in only five chairs.
3. Why didn't you buy that thick dictionary? I didn't buy it because it is inconvenient for carrying around.
4. People use eyes for seeing, and use ears for hearing.
5. That student who is speaking with the teacher does not know many words.
6. I usually do not get up until 9:30 when I do not go to school.
7. Do you know how many days it takes from here to Japan?
8. Yesterday I went to the book store and bought ten books.
9. For what do you use your pen?
10. If there are too many difficult words, you need not write all of them today.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 26 (Dai. nijūrokka)

牛	ushi	cow; bull; ox; cattle (n.)
角	tsuno	horn (n.)
馬	uma	horse (n.)
体	karada	body (n.) Cf., "karada-ni-ii," Lesson 17.
ほそい	hosoi	slender; small; thin (adj.)
力	chikara	(physical) strength; power; force (n.)
強い	tsuyoi	strong; powerful (adj.)
歩くこと	aruku-koto	walking; to walk (n.)*
おそい	osoi	slow; late (adj.) Cf., "hayai" Lesson 14 and 17.
弱い (よわい)	yowai	weak (adj.)
走ること	hashiru-koto	running; to run (n.) See "aruku- koto," above.*
何本	nan-bon	how many (long, slender objects) Cf., "iku-hon," Lesson 7.
まがる	magaru	to become bent or crooked (v.i.) (reg. verb)
まがつて居ます	magatte-imasu	(it) is bent or crooked. See Les. 19 for use of "iru" with v.i. to express persisting state or condition, page 112.
まつすぐ	mas-sugu	(perfectly) straight (n.)
つめ	tsume	nail (as on finger and toe); hoof; claw (n.)
足のつめ	ashi-no-tsume	toenail; hoof (n.)
(手のつめ)	(te-no-tsume)	fingernail (n.)

同じ	onaji (on-naji)	the same (n.) (used attributively as an adjective without "no", as in: onaji sensei--the same teacher; onaji hon--the same book, etc.)*
ちがって居ます	chigatte-imasu	(it) is different; unlike; dissimilar. (See "magatte imasu," above, and Lesson 23.)*
われる	wareru	to be broken; be split; be cracked ( <u>v.i.</u> ) (semi-reg.)
二つにわれる	futatsu-ni-wareru	to split in two.
われて居ません	warete-imasen	(it) is not split or cloven. (Note the absence of "WA" after "warete.")
ち	chichi	milk (n.)
飲む(のむ)	nomu	to drink; swallow (v.t.) (reg. v.)
牛乳(牛にゅう)	gyū-nyū	(cow's) milk (n.)
肉	niku	meat; flesh (n.)
牛肉	gyū-niku	beef (n.)
しかし	shikashi	but; however ("Keredomo" may be used at the beginning of, or at the end of a clause, but "shikashi" is always used at the beginning.)*
---そうです	----sō desu	it is said that ---; I hear that ----; I am told that ----; I understand that ----; they say that ----.*
むかし	mukashi	in ancient times; long ago; "good old days" (adv.)
ほとんど --- ない (ほとんど --- ません)	hotondo ----nai (hotondo----masen)	hardly any; practically no (with neg. verb translated affirmatively).*
今では	ima-do-wa	nowadays; recently; lately (adv.)

印度(いん度)	Indo	India (p.n.)
一人	-jin	suffix denoting a native of a place or a citizen of a country.
印度人	Indo-jin	Hindu; people of India (n.)
好き	suki	fondness; liking for anything; taste (n.)
きらい	kirai	dislike; aversion; abhorrence; distaste; prejudice (n.)
大好き	dai-suki	great fondness (n.)*
(大嫌い)	(dai-kirai)	great dislike; abhorrence; hatred; loathing (n.)



## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 26 (Dai nijūrokka)

#### ARUKU-KOTO-GA-OSOI

The particle KOTO, "thing (abstract)," "fact," or "matter," joined to verbs render them noun equivalents, and such phrases may be translated into English infinitives or participles (gerunds), e.g., ARUKU KOTO, "to walk" or "walking;" YOMU KOTO, "to read" or "reading."

ARUKU KOTO	"to walk," "walking"
KAKEU KOTO	"to write," "writing"
TABERU KOTO	"to eat," "eating"
NOMU KOTO	"to drink," "drinking"
NARAU KOTO	"to learn," "learning"
HASHIRU KOTO	"to run," "running"
SAMPO SURU KOTO	"to take a walk," "walking"
BENKYŌ SURU KOTO	"to study," "studying"
RYOKŌ SURU KOTO	"to travel," "traveling"

The particle NO is sometimes substituted for KOTO, but as NO is also substituted for MONO, "thing" (concrete, i.e., "object"), as well as "one" or "person," it must, therefore, be used only when there is no room for confusion.

#### ONAJI DESU and CHIGATTE IMASU

ONAJI DESU, "to be the same or identical;" and CHIGATTE IMASU, "to be different, dissimilar, or wrong," are preceded by the particle TO, which is translated "as" or "from;" e.g., KORE TO ONAJI DESU, "it is the same as this;" KORE TO CHIGATTE IMASU, "it is different from this." CHIGATTE IMASU can also be rendered CHIGAI-IMASU, with no practical difference in meaning. (See Lesson 23, G.N.)

ONAJI is frequently rendered ONNAJI, ONNASHI, or even ONASHI in spoken Japanese. "The same thing (--idea)" is frequently rendered ONAJI KOTO, ONNAJI KOTO, ONNASHI KOTO, or ONASHI KOTO. Instances of doubling the consonant are not uncommon in colloquial Japanese, cf., MINNA for MINA; AMMARI for AMARI; YAPPARI for YAHARI, etc.

#### (Predicate verb or adjective) + SŌ DESU

-SŌ DESU is a suffix joined to a clause to denote the statement preceding it is a hearsay, -SŌ DESU, therefore, can be translated variously as, "he (or they) said," "he (or they) told me," "I hear that," "they tell me that," "they say that," "I understand that," "I am informed that," "it is reported that," "it is rumored that," "rumor has it that," etc.



Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese (Don't use negative predicates):

一、牛の角は大ていまがつて居ますか。

二、たいわんはいつも寒いんですか。

三、牛は体が小さくて足が長いんですか。

四、牛は足が長くて走る事が早いんですか。

五、のどがかわいた時にはごはんを食べますか。

六、日本人は魚はになれば食べませんか。

七、米國人は牛のちゝをけつしてのみませんか。

八、牛のちゝは馬のちゝと言いますか。

九、日本語を書くのと読むのではどつちが好きですか。

十、歩くのは走るのより早いんですか。

Lesson 26

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Dog's claws are not split into two.
2. In former days, they did not have trains, but nowadays we have cars and steamers, etc. besides trains.
3. At first I didn't like Japanese, but now I have come to like it.
4. Which book do you like the best?
5. I don't like to carry a brief case with me.
6. It is difficult to learn Japanese quickly.
7. You said the same thing many times.
8. This is just like the one I have.
9. It is said that there are many fish in this sea.
10. I can hardly read that book.



## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 26

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Drinking milk is better for one's health than drinking beer.
2. Beef you may eat, but horse meat you must not.
3. He is thinner and weaker than I.
4. This cow is slow in running, but it is very strong.
5. It is said that the Japanese like to eat fish raw.
6. Since my teacher speaks fast, I frequently say, "Please say it once more."
7. I like to take a walk with my wife.
8. I am pretty fast in reading and writing, but slow in speaking.
9. In ancient times, the Japanese ate almost no beef at all, but nowadays many people eat it.
10. I like to study Japanese early in the morning.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 27 (Dai nijūshichi ka)

スミスさん	Sumisu san	Mr. Smith (direct address, when not accompanied by a case particle)
--- 持つて歩いて 下さい	---motte aruite kudasai	Please hold (this) and walk (around).*
--- 持つて歩いて 居ます	---motte aruite imasu	(one) is carrying (it about). (Lit., (one) is holding (it) and walking; or (one) is walking, carrying (it).)*
--- 持つて何を して居ますか	---motte nani wo shite imasu ka	What are you doing with (holding it) ("Motte" is used adverbially, to indicate manner. Cf., TSURETE SAMPO SURU, Les. 14, and ARUITE, Les. 22.)
つぶる	tsuburu	to shut (one's eyes) (v.t.) (reg. verb)
目をつぶつて	me-wo-tsubutte	with your eyes closed (example of adverbial use of the conjunctive form).
町	machi	street; town; city (n.)
町を歩く	machi-wo-aruku	to walk (about) the town; walk up (down) the street(s) (Cf., "Umi no ue wo---", Les. 9, G.N., and "shima no soba wo---", Les. 15)
事	kotó	matter; thing (abstract); fact (nominalizer)
見えない	mienai	(one) cannot see; (it) is not visible. /familiar negative form of "mieru" (semi-reg. verb)/ (v.i.)
ふさぐ	fusagu (fusaide)	to cover (the ears); to stop up; block (up); close (v.t.) (reg. verb). Assimilated conj. form: <u>fusaide</u>
耳をふさいで	mimi wo fusaide	with one's ears covered up.
おんがく	óngaku	music (n.)

聞える	kikoeru	to be audible; be heard; (can) hear ( <u>v.i.</u> ) (semi-reg.) Intransitive form of KIKU, to hear. Cf., "mieru" ( <u>v.i.</u> ), "miru" ( <u>v.t.</u> ). Conj. form: kikoete.*
聞えない	kikoenai	(one) cannot hear; (it) is not audible; inaudible (familiar negative form of "kikoeru." Cf., "mienai," above.*
誰でも	dare-demo	everybody; anybody (with the connotation of "anybody at all;" "whosoever").*
目が見える	me-ga-mieru	to be able to see; to have the capacity to see. (Cf., "haba ga hiroi," etc., Les. 25.)*
いえ、そうじゃ ありません	ie, sō ja arimasen	no, that is not so. (An example of this reply used when the verb in the question is other than "desu!" The more common and proper reply would be: ie mie- masen. See IIE, SŌ JA ARIMASEN, Lesson 1.)
めくら	mekura	blind person; the blind (n.)
めくらの人	mekura-no-hito	blind person (n.)
耳が聞える	mimi-ga-kikoeru	to be able to hear; to have the capacity to hear. (Cf., "me ga mieru," above.)*
つんぼ	tsumbo	deafness; deaf person; the deaf(n.)
つんぼの人	tsumbo-no-hito	deaf person (n.)*
に	ni	to (particle denoting the indirect object. See Les. 10)
私共に	watakushi-domo ni	to us
いつでも	itsu-demo	always; anytime; on any or every occasion; all the time.*
明るい	akarui	light, bright (adj.)
暗い	kurai	dark (adj.)

入る (いる)	iru	to be necessary; to be in need of; to need; want; require (v.i.) (reg. verb) Assimilated conj. form: itte (Strictly speaking, the proper kanji is: 要る IRU.)
明り	akari	a light (n.)
小包	kozutsumi	package; parcel (n.) / Derived from KOZUTSUMI YŪBIN, "parcel post," hence used in this sense. KO-, a diminutive prefix meaning small (CHIISAI), joined to TSUTSU- MI (from the verb, TSUTSUMU, "to wrap.") "package." TSUTSUMI, however, undergoes phonetic change after Kō- and becomes -ZUTSUMI.7
ひも	himó	cord; twine; string (n.)
小包を出す	kozutsumi-wo- dasu	to send (forward, or mail) a package. (Cf., "tegami wo dasu," Les. 24.)
ゆうびん局	yūbinkyoku	post office (n.)
葉書	hagaki	post card; postal card (n.)
葉書を出すにも	hagaki wo dasu ni <u>mo</u>	(in order) to send (mail) a post card, as well; even to send a post card ---. (Cf., G.N., Les. 13.)*
---なくてもいい	---nakutemo ii	it is not necessary to ---; (one) doesn't have to ---; (one) need not ---. (Lit., "it is proper (well) even if one doesn't---.)*
ゆうびんばこ	yūbin-bako	mailbox (n.)
---てもいい	---temo ii	(one) may ----. (See KAITTE MO II N' DESU KA, Les. 13, G.N.)
送る	okuru	to send; forward; ship (v.t.) (reg. verb)
はいる	hairu	to go (come) into; get into; enter (v.i.) (reg. verb) Assimilated conj. form: haitte



## GRAMMATICAL NOTE

### Lesson 27 (Dai nijūshichi ka)

DOZO KORE WO MOTTE ARUITE KUDASAI

ANATA WA NANI WO MOTTE ARUITE IMASU KA

All verbs (or predicate adjectives) in direct line of thought or action are put in the conjunctive form except the last one. The last verb (or predicate adjective) is followed by auxiliary verb suffixes which determine the voice, mood, tense, degree of politeness, etc., of the preceding verb or verbs. E.g.,

ANATA WA NANI WO MOTTE ARUITE IMASU KA

(You what hold and walk are?)

"What are you holding and walking(about)?"

"What are you carrying (around with you)?"

ARUITE IMASU means, "(one) is walking", or "one" is in the state or process of walking."

MOTTE and ARUITE describe the successive stages of action, and they are neutral as to tense, but in translation they should be made to agree with that of the last verb to satisfy the rules of grammar in English.

However, if you regard the phrase DOZO....KUDASAI, "Do please..... for me", in the first sentence; and ANATA WA....IMASU, "You....are", in the second sentence as the principal parts, the remaining parts of the sentence reduce themselves to adverbial phrases.

KIKU KOTO GA DEKI-NAI and KIKOE-NAI

The potential of the verb KIKU "to hear", is rendered KIKOERU or KIKU KOTO GA DEKIRU. Both KIKOERU and KIKU KOTO GA DEKIRU are frequently translated "(one) can (is able to) hear", but there is a shade of difference in meaning between them and they are not always interchangeable.

The potential expressed by (verb, present tense) + KOTO GA DEKIRU is more specific and emphatic than all the other forms. (See Les. 6, MIERU; Les. 14, -KOTO GA DEKIRU.)

For all practical purposes, remember that the form construed with the phrase -KOTO GA DEKIRU is transitive or active, and that all the other potential forms are intransitive or passive.

KIKOERU, like the verb MIERU, is intransitive and means "to be audible", "to be heard", "can be heard"; (lit. "perceptible to the ear" or "loud enough to be heard.")

DEKIRU (the potential form of SURU) as well as KIKOERU are semi-reg. verbs, hence the familiar negative suffix-NAI is joined to the stem of the 1st base, e.g., DEKI-NAI, KIKOE-NAI.

ME GA MIENAI and MIMI GA KIKOENAI

ME GA MIENAI and MIMI GA KIKOENAI are idiomatic phrases. ME GA MIENAI means "(one's) eyes do not (have the capacity to) see", hence "(one) is blind"; and MIMI GA KIKOENAI means "(one's) ears do not (have the capacity to) hear", "(one) is deaf."

Compare the phrases below:

ANATA WA MIMI GA KIKOENAI.	"You are deaf." "Your ears cannot hear."
WATAKUSHI WA ME GA MIENAI.	"I am blind." "My eyes cannot see."
ANO HITO WA EIGO GA DEKINAI.	"That person is poor in English."
ANO HITO WA ARUKU KOTO GA DEKINAI.	"He (she) cannot walk."

MEKURA NO HITO and TSUMBO NO HITO

MEKURA NO HITO, "a blind person"; and TSUMBO NO HITO, "a deaf person," can be simplified to MEKURA, "the blind," and TSUMBO, "the deaf," respectively. The short form is used as often as the long one, though the long form is somewhat elaborate.

HAGAKI WO DASU NIMO YŪBIN-KYOKU E IKA-NAKUTEBA NARIMASEN KA

HAGAKI WO DASU NIMO YŪBIN-KYOKU E IKA-NAKUTEBA NARIMASEN KA means "Does one have to go to the post office even in mailing a post card?" NIMO is composed of two particles, and each retains its individual function. NI placed after a verb in present tense expresses purpose (Cf., NONI, G.N., Lesson 25; and HANAMI NI.....Lesson 20); and MO retains something of its original force of "even", hence analogous to the concessive mood, see G.N. Lesson 13, NEKO MO.....; KAITTE MO.....

HAGAKI YA TEGAMI WO DASU NIWA YŪBIN-KYOKU E  
IKA NAKUTE MO II N' DESU

HAGAKI YA TEGAMI WO DASU NIWA YŪBIN-KYOKU E IKA NAKUTE MO II N' DESU means "One need not go to the post office in mailing post cards and letters." NIWA is composed of two particles, i.e., NI, which expresses purpose when it is construed with verbs in the present tense, and WA, which sets off the adverbial clause.

-NAKUTE MO II N' DESU, the concessive form construed with the negative auxiliary suffix, means "it is not necessary to," or "(one) need not." (Cf., G.N. Lesson 13, KAITTE MO II N' DESU KA.)

## DEMO

Attached to an interrogative pronoun, the postposition DEMO renders a "selective" pronoun or adverb. E.g.,

DARE-DEMO.....	anybody, everybody
DORE-DEMO.....	anyone
NAN-DEMO.....	anything
DOCHIRA-DEMO.....	either one
DOKO-DEMO.....	anywhere
ITSU-DEMO.....	any time, always
IKUTSU-DEMO.....	any number
IKURA-DEMO.....	any amount

Construct the sentences using the following:

一 月をつぶして

二 誰でも

三 暗い時に

四 何よりも早く

五 手紙を出すには

六 持つて歩いて居ます。

七 つんばの人

八 買いたい時には

九 耳をふさいで

十 こしらえるには

十一 送りたい時には

十二 めくらの人



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 27

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. You need not get up early tomorrow.
2. Those who can see are not blind.
3. Those who can hear are not deaf.
4. He is listening to the music with his eyes closed.
5. A boy is drinking milk sitting in a chair.
6. Anybody can go to that school.
7. Is it always dark at night?
8. I always go to the post office to send parcels.
9. What do you need in order to cut paper.
10. When the sun comes up in the morning, it gets light.

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 27

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. You need not go to the post office when you want to send letters, post cards, etc.
2. Can you see things (even) without a light when it is dark?  
No, I cannot see without a light.
3. They say that Capt Larson listens to music with his eyes closed.
4. Does everyone know Japanese? No, only those who studied Japanese know it.
5. What do blind people use in walking on the street? They usually use canes (TSUE) or dogs.
6. I had to stand and eat since there were no chairs.
7. Whose student is it that is walking now? What school carrying a book.
8. I need books, dictionaries, etc. in order to study Japanese.
9. When you close your eyes you cannot see anything, but even if you cover your ears, you can hear some sound.
10. About what time does it get light, and about what time does it get dark now(days)?

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 28 (Dai nijūhakkā)

読める	yomeru	to be able to read; to be readable; legible (v.i.) (semi-reg.)*
読めます	yomemasu	(one) can read; (it) is readable or legible.*
よく	yōku	well (adv. from "yoi" meaning "good." See Les. 16) (Often translated as "skillfully," "fluently," "hard," etc., depending upon context.)
言葉	kotoba	language; tongue; expression (n.) (Cf., "kotoba" meaning "expression." Les. 25.)
だ	da	Inflected suffix, meaning "to be," "(I) am," "(he, she, it) is," "(we, you, they) are." See page 27, DE.
だからです	da kara desu	"it is because"
上手	jōzu	skill; dexterity; an expert (adj. and n.) "jōzu na," skillful (quasi-adj.); "jōzu desu," is skillful (pred.)
上手に	jōzu ni	skillfully; cleverly; well (adv.)*
外国語	gaikoku-go	foreign language (tongue) (n.) *Cf., "Nihon-go," Les. 7; "Shina-go," Les. 23
かなり	kanari	fairly well (adv.) Cf., "kanari ōkii," Les. 14, and "kanari nite imasu," Les. 23
話せる	hanaseru	to be able to or can speak (de- rived from "hanasu," to speak. Cf., "yomeru," above (v.i.) (semi-reg).*)
下手	hetā	unskillfulness; awkwardness; poor (hand) (n.) (opposite of "jōzu," above)

で	de	in (particle meaning "within the period of ---.") Cf., "Honshū de ---," Les. 15 and G.N., page 84.
一年位で	ichinen gurai de	in (about) one year; in approximately one year's time
習える	naraeru	to be able to learn (derived from "narau," to learn. Cf., "yomeru," "hanaseru," above) (v.i.) (semi-reg.).*
習えましょうか	naraemashō ka	do you suppose one can learn? I wonder if one can learn? Cf., MASHO KA, Les. 20, page 119.
さあ	sā	well; let me see; now (let me think) (used to express doubt or hesitation in reply)
習えないでしょう	naraenai deshō	I suppose it cannot be learned; (one) probably cannot learn. (Cf. "sakanai deshō," Les. 20, page 119.
よく勉強すれば	yoku benkyō sureba	if one studies hard (diligently)
勉強出来ますか	benkyō dekimasu ka	can (one) study? ("Dekiru" is the potential form for "suru" to do. Cf., "benkyō suru koto ga dekimasu ka," means "could one study (if he be tired)?"*)
多分(---でしょう)tabun (---deshō)		perhaps; maybe; in all probability
多分出来るでしょう	tabun dekiru deshō	most probably (I) can.*
つづける	tsuzukeru	to continue; carry on (with); keep on (with) (v.t.) (semi-reg.)
病氣	byōki	sickness; illness (n.)
病氣になる	byōki ni naru	to become sick
つづけて	tsuzukete	continuously; continually; without a break (adv.) From "tsuzukeru." "Tsuzukete" used as an adverb.



ばかり	bakari	nothing but; only; just. Cf., DAKE, page 105.
悪い	warui	bad; harmful; evil; wicked (adj.)
うん動(うんどう)	undō	(physical) exercise; athletic sports; games (n.)
うん動をする	undō (wo) suru	to exercise; take exercise. Cf., "sampo (wo) suru," Les. 14, and Les. 21.
元氣	genki	vigor; energy; vitality (n.)
元氣です	genki desu	(one) is in excellent health; is hale and hearty (Cf., "suki desu," "kirai desu," Les. 26)*
病人	byōnin	sick person; invalid; a patient; the sick (n.)
はたらける	hatarakeru	to be able to work (derived from "hataraku," to work. Cf., "yomeru," etc., above) (v.i.) (semi-reg.)*
よくはたらけますか	yoku hatarakemasu ka	can (one) work hard?
元氣がない (悪い)	genki ga nai (warui)	to lack vitality; have no "pep"; to be in low spirits (See "nai," Les. 13, page 88)*
おもい	omoi	serious; grave; severe (adj.) Cf., "omoi" meaning "heavy," Les. 14
おもい病氣の人	omoi byōki no hito	(person with a serious case (of sickness); a person who is very sick; a person (who is) seriously ill.
夜	yōru	at night (adv.)
ねる	neru	to lie down; go to bed (v.i.) (semi-reg.)
ねても	nete-mo	even if (one) goes to bed or retires (Cf., KAITTE MO II N' DESU KA, G.N., Les. 13, p. 71
ねむる	nemuru	to fall asleep; to sleep (v.i.) (reg. verb)

ねむれる	nemureru	can fall asleep; can sleep (v.i.) (semi-reg.)
ねむれません	nemuremasen	(one) cannot fall asleep.
その人	sono hito	such people
いしや	ishá	doctor; a physician; surgeon (n.)
いしやにかゝる	ishá ni kakaru	to be under a doctor's care; consult or see a doctor. "Kakaru" (v.i.) (reg. verb)
色々の	iro-iro no	various; various kinds of; of different kinds (sorts) (adj.) ("iro-iro na," is an alterna- tive form, Les. 19, page 109)
くすり	kusuri	medicine (n.)
に	ni	to (particle used to indicate the indirect object)
やる (やつて)	yarú (yatte)	to give (from a superior to an inferior) (v.t.) (reg. verb) Assimilated conj. form: yatte.
やつて	yatte	by giving; give and*
なおす (な おします)	naosu (naoshimasu)	to cure; heal; remedy; correct (v.t.) (reg. verb)
なおる (なおります)	naoru (naorimasu)	to be cured (v.i.) (reg. verb)
くすりを飲む	kusuri wo nomu	to take medicine. (Lit., to drink medicine)
のんでもなお りません	nondemo naorimasen	(one) will not get well even if (one) takes medicine; (sick- ness) will not be cured even if one takes medicine.*

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 28 (Dai nijūhakk)

#### BAKARI

Following substantives, phrases, and attributive stems, BAKARI means "only (about)" or "nothing but" and may be followed by KA or SHIKA and a negative verb that is translated positively.

BENKYŌ BAKARI SURU

"(One) does nothing but his study."

TSUKUE NO UE NI BAKARI KOSHIKAKERU

"(One) sits on nothing but the desk."

KAKU BAKARI

"Nothing but to write."

When used after substantives, BAKARI may be used in place of postpositions.

Cf., BENKYŌ BAKARI (WO) SURU

YOME-MASU; HANASE-MASU; NARAE-MASU; NEMURE-MASU; URE-MASU

Verbs of potential meaning may be formed by adding RU to the conditional base of regular verbs. The resulting verbs in -RU act as semi-regular verbs and are intransitive as all potential verbs are. E.g.,

Reg. verb

Semi-reg. verb (potential)

		<u>Familiar</u>		<u>Polite</u>	
HATARAU	"to work"	HATARAKE-RU	or	HATARAKE-MASU	"can or able to work"
HANASU	"to speak"	HANASE-RU	or	HANASE-MASU	"can or able to speak"
TATSU	"to stand"	TATE-RU	or	TATE-MASU	"can or able to stand"
SHINU	"to die"	SHINE-RU	or	SHINE-MASU	"can or able to die"
NARAU	"to learn"	NARAE-RU	or	NARAE-MASU	"can or able to learn"
YOMU	"to read"	YOME-RU	or	YOME-MASU	"can or able to read"
URU	"to sell"	URE-RU	or	URE-MASU	"can or able to sell"
NEMURU	"to sleep"	NEMURE-RU	or	NEMURE-MASU	"can or able to sleep"

For the difference in the shade of meaning between the potential form construed with the suffix -KOTO GA DEKIRU and these forms, see KIKU KOTO GA DEKINAI and KIKOE NAI, Lesson 27.

The potential form derived from the conditional base of regular verbs are intransitive or passive; so, what would be regarded as the object in English is actually the subject of these verbs in the Japanese construction. E.g., EIGO GA YOMEMASU; NIHONGO WA HANASEMASU. (Cf., Lesson 6, MIEMASU, page 27.)



These potential forms of the regular verbs are inflected like semi-regular verbs as explained before. (See G.N., Lesson 4, page 17), e.g.,

YOME-NAI Imperfective base with the familiar negative suffix, -NAI  
YOLE-MASU Conjunctive base with the polite suffix, -MASU.  
YOMERU Conclusive and Attributive bases in the familiar form.  
YOMERE-BA Conditional base with the conditional suffix, -BA.

BENKYŌ (WO) SURU and BENKYŌ (GA) DEKIRU

SURU, "to do," is transitive and DEKIRU, "possible" or "feasible," is intransitive; therefore, the case particles, if they are used at all, should be WO before SURU and GA before DEKIRU, which is a semi-regular verb.

BYŌNIN NIWA YŌKU HATARAKEMASU KA

BYŌNIN NIWA YŌKU HATARAKEMASU KA, means "Can the sick work hard (efficiently)?" The subject in English of a potential verb (or verbs that can be translated into English in the potential, e.g., WAKARU, MIERU, KIKOERU) is followed by the particle NI(WA) in the Japanese construction (notional subject). E.g.,

BYŌNIN NIWA BENKYŌ GA YŌKU DEKIMASEN.

"The sick cannot do their study efficiently."

ANO KATA NIWA NIHONGO GA YOKU DEKIMASU.

"That person can handle Japanese very well."

EIGO WA ANO HITO NIWA YOMEMASEN.

"That person cannot read English."

SHINAGO WA WATAKUSHI NIWA WAKAREMASEN.

"I cannot understand Chinese."

ANATA NIWA ANO YAMA GA MIEMASU KA.

"Can you see that mountain?"

Observe that the subject is followed by NIWA and the object is followed by GA or WA. The particle NI may be omitted before the separative particle WA without changing the meaning. E.g., WATAKUSHI WA YAMA GA MIEMASU, "I can see a mountain." However, there is a slight difference in the shade of meaning between WATAKUSHI WA YAMA GA MIEMASU and WATAKUSHI NIWA YAMA GA MIEMASU. The former means literally, "As for me, mountain is visible"; and the latter, "To me, mountain is visible."



GENKI (GA YOI N') DESU and GENKI GA NAI (WARUI) N' DESU

GENKI DESU or GENKI GA YOI N' DESU means "to be full of vigor (pep)"; or "to be in high spirits." GENKI GA NAI N' DESU means "to lack vigor"; or "to be in low spirits." The text uses the form GENKI GA WARUI, but this form is hardly ever used and may be regarded as being unidiomatic.

TOKIDOKI KUSURI WO NONDE MO NAORIMASEN

By the sentence, TOKIDOKI KUSURI WO NONDE MO NAORIMASEN, the author obviously intends to convey the idea "Sometimes it is not cured even when one takes medicine." However, divorced from its context, one will naturally construe TOKIDOKI to modify the verb NOMU, and translate the sentence as "Even if one takes medicine occasionally it will not be cured." The sentence can be improved by either placing WA after TOKIDOKI to set it off or transposing TOKIDOKI from the beginning of the sentence to the place in front of NAORIMASEN which it should modify. E.g.,

TOKIDOKI WA KUSURI WO NONDE MO NAORIMASEN, or  
KUSURI WO NONDE MO TOKIDOKI NAORIMASEN.

The clearest way to express the idea, however, is to change the construction of the verb NAORIMASEN to NAORANAI KOTO GA ARIMASU. E.g.,

TOKIDOKI KUSURI WO NONDE MO NAORANAI KOTO GA ARIMASU.

"There are times when it (sickness) is not cured even though (one) takes medicine."

"Sometimes it (sickness) is not cured even though (one) takes medicine."

Rewrite the following sentences using the alternative potential forms:

一、今 お金 が ありません から はらうこと が 出来ません。

二、あなたは 日本語 を 書くこと が 出来ます か。

三、あなたは 一 から 万 まで かぞえること が 出来ます か。

四、私は あの 本 を 取ること が 出来ません。

五、此の 水 は のむこと が 出来ません。

六、お金 が なくて も 物 を 買うこと が 出来ます か。

七、あなたは しな語 を 上手 に 話すこと が 出来ます か。

八、日本語 は 一ケ年位 で 習うこと が 出来ません。

九、あなたは 小さい 字 を 読むこと が 出来ます か。

十、あなたは 今 とんで 居る ひこうき を 見ること が 出来ます か。

十一、私は 目 を つぶつて 町 を 歩くこと が 出来ません。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 28

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. He can probably work hard because he is big.
2. Lt. Phelan does nothing but study from morning to night.
3. Major Allensworth is always studying.
4. These shoes have been expertly repaired.
5. Can that patient walk?
6. Can you use it even if it is broken?
7. Since she is ill, she is always . . .
8. Capt. Peachee is proficient in foreign languages.
9. Please listen carefully to what the teacher says.
10. Can we all get into this room?

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 28

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Why is Capt. Dong good in Chinese? It's because he was in China (for) about six years.
2. About how long does it take to learn French? You'll probably become quite proficient in about two years since French resembles English.
3. He can't work since he is seriously ill.
4. Do you take medicine when you can't sleep even though you want to (sleep)?
5. Can you study five hours at a stretch? Well, I probably can.
6. Do you suppose it will take about 2 hours (to go) from this town to the next town by car?
7. He does not consult a doctor even if he gets ill.
8. I did nothing but travel (for) a year.
9. He is in bed, but not asleep.
10. I'm poor in speaking Japanese, but can read and write it quite well.



# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 29 (Dai nijūku ka)

讀本	tokuhon	reader (from "reading book") (n.)
六十二ページの え	rokujūni pēji no e	the picture (which is) on page 62
左の方にある木	hidari no hō ni aru ki	tree which is on the left-hand side; tree to the left
---は---ですが---は そうじゃあり ません	---wa---dosuga--- wa---sō ja arima- sen	---is---, but---isn't---. (Cf., "sō ja arimasen," G.N., Les. 1, page 4.)
杉 (すぎ)	sugi	cryptomeria; Japanese cedar (n.)
Noun + かも知れ ません	(noun)+ kamo shiremasen	it may (might) be (noun); perhaps it is---; maybe it is---; pos- sibly it is---.*
川	kawa	river (n.) (Cf., "Kawa," Les. 19, page 110.)
ながれる	nagareru	to flow; stream; run; drain (v.i., semi-reg.)
橋	hashi	bridge (n.)
かゝる	kakaru	to hang (on or from); be suspended (on or from), (v.i.) (reg. v.) Assimilated conj. form: ka- katte.
川には橋がかゝつ て居ます	kawa ni wa hashi ga kakatte imasu	a bridge spans the river; there is a bridge (built) across the river. (Cf., "hashi ga tomatte imasu," Les. 11, G.N., page 63.) (persisting state implied.)
鐵橋 (てつ橋)	tekkyō	iron bridge; steel bridge (n.)
その向うに	sono mukō ni	beyond it; on the other side of it.
小山	koyama	hill (n.) (Cf., OKA, Les. 12.)
遠くの	tōku no	distant; far-off (-away) (quasi- adj.)* (tōku is a noun) Cf., CHIKAKU.

それより	sore yori	than it (that); compared with it (that) See "yori," Les. 10, page 53.
低い	hikui	low (adj.)
トンネル	tonneru	tunnel (n.)
鐵道 (てつ道)	tetsudō	railroad; railway (n.)
鐵道が通つて 居ます	tetsudō ga tōtte imasu	railroad runs through (it) Cf., "hashi ga kakatte imasu," above
出る	deru	to come out; leave (v.i.) (semi-reg.) See Les. 9 for use of WO, see "umi no ue wo---", Les. 9, G.N., pages 45 and 46.
出てから	dete kara	after coming out (leaving) (See Les. 20, for use of "kara" after conjunctive form of verbs.)
少し前に	sukoshi mae ni	a little while ago; few minutes before (Cf., "sukoshi futte imasu," Les. 21)
トンネルを 通りました	tonneru wo tōrimashita	passed through the tunnel (for use of WO, see "deru," above)
空	sōra	sky (n.)
晴れる	hareru	to become clear (as of weather) (v.i.) (semi-reg.)
晴れて居る	harete iru	to be clear (persisting state or condition)
日が出て居ます	hi ga dete imasu	sun is out; sun is shining (persisting state)
くもる	kumoru	to become cloudy (overcast); to cloud up (v.i.) (reg. verb)
くもつて居る	kumotte iru	to be cloudy (persisting state or condition)
始める	hajimeru	to begin; commence; start (v.t.) (semi-reg.)

降(ふ)り始める	furi-hajimeru	to begin to rain (v.i., semi-reg.) (transitivity or intransitivity is determined by what precedes "hajimeru.")
晴れて居る日	harete iru hi	clear days. Lit., days which are clear (persisting state or condition)
くもつて居る日	kumotte iru hi	cloudy days. (Lit., days which are cloudy) (persisting state)
はい色	hai-iro	gray; ash color; leaden (n.)
自動車	jidōsha	automobile (n.)
走つて来ます	hashitte kimasu	to come (running, speeding) this way (toward the speaker) Cf., "dete kimasu," Les. 12, page 62.
分る	wakaru	to be able to make out (determine); be able to tell; know (v.i.) (reg. verb) (Cf., "Shinago ga wakarimasu ka," Les. 23, page 146)
よりかゝる	yorikakaru	to lean (on); stand (against); rest against (v.i.) (reg. v.) ("ni" is always used to indicate the object or thing on or against which one leans.)
服	fuku	clothes; dress; suit; (n.) (often used as suffix to form a noun indicating the particular type of clothes.)
日本服	nihon-fuku	Japanese clothes (n.) (synonymous "kimono")
着(き)る	kiru	to wear; to have on; to put on (coats, etc.) (v.t., semi-reg.)* Cf., "kiru," to cut (Les. 24), which is a regular verb.
げた	getā	(wooden) clogs (n.)
はく	naku	to wear; to have on; to put on (shoes, etc.) (v.t.) (reg. verb)*

洋服	yō-fuku	European clothes (dress, suit)(n.) (Contr. of "seiyō-fuku" 西洋服 )
外套	gaitō	overcoat; topcoat (n.)
ステッキ	sutekki	walking stick; cane; stick (n.)
かぶる	kaburu	to wear; to have on; to put on (hats, etc.) (v.t.) (reg. verb)*
山本さんのかぶつ て居るぼうし	Yamamoto-san no kabutte iru bōshi	hat which Mr. Yamamoto is wearing (has on his head) ("no" often replaces "ga" to denote the subject of a relative clause)
"A" と "B" とは同じ ですか	"A" to "B" to wa onaji desu ka	are "A" and "B" the same? (the second "to" is often omitted.)
("A" は "B" と同じで すか)	("A" wa "B" to onaji desu ka)	is "A" the same as "B"? (Cf., "to nite imasu," "to chigatte imasu," Les. 23)
中折ぼうし	nakaore-bōshi	felt hat (Lit., "folded-in-the middle" hat) (n.)
鳥打ぼうし	toriuchi-bōshi	cap (Lit., a "bird-shooting" hat) (n.)
手ぶくろ	tebukuro	gloves (n.)
はめる	hameru	to wear; to have on; to put on (gloves, rings, etc.) (v.t.) (semi-reg.)
よく分かりません	yoku wakarimasen	(one) can't tell (determine) very well; can't make out for sure (Cf., "yoku yome- masu," Les. 26; "yoku ben- kyō sureba," Les. 28)



## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 29 (Dai nijūku ka)

#### TABUN SUGI NO KI KAMO-SHIREMASEN

KAMO-SHIREMASEN means "perhaps," "maybe," "might," "may," or "possibly," and it can follow a noun, pronoun, adjective, verb (present or past) or adverb.

TABUN means "in all probability or likelihood," "most or very likely" or "presumably"; and it is properly construed with the conjectural form of verbs and adjectives, i.e., -DESHŌ, etc. (See G.N., Lesson 20, -MA-SHŌ and -DESHŌ, TABUN-----DESHŌ, page 122.)

TABUN SUGI NO KI KAMO SHIREMASEN, therefore, can best be translated, "Most likely it is a cryptomeria tree (though I do not know it for a fact)." TABUN GAKKŌ KAMO SHIREMASEN may be translated, "Probably it is a school, (for all I know)."

It must be said, however, that TABUN-----DESHŌ express more certainty on the part of the speaker than TABUN-----KAMO SHIREMASEN. TABUN may be omitted in either sentence. E.g.,

ARE WA YAMAMOTO-SAN KAMO SHIREMASEN

"That may be Mr. Yamamoto."

ANO IEYA NARA HIROI KAMO SHIREMASEN

"If it's that room, it may be roomy."

ANO GAKUSEI WA EIGO DE HANASU KAMO SHIREMASEN.

"That student will perhaps speak in English."

SŌ KAMO SHIREMASEN.

"It may be so."

#### TŌKU NO HŌ, MIGI NO HŌ, HIDARI NO HŌ, MACHI NO HŌ

(Noun) + NO + HŌ constitutes an idiomatic phrase which describes the general position or direction. E.g.,

TŌKU NO HŌ "remote or distant parts or point"; "(in) the distance."

MIGI NO HŌ "(towards or on) the right (hand) side";  
"place (one) towards (on) the right (hand side)."

MACHI NO HŌ "(towards or in) the town" /as opposed to  
other place(s) under consideration/

MIGI NO HŌ NI ~~MIERU~~ NO WA MIZUUMI DESU KA

MIGI NO HŌ NI MIERU NO WA MIZUUMI DESU KA, means "Is what you can see towards (on) the right (hand side) a lake?" Observe that the particle NI is construed with the intransitive verb MIERU, "visible" or "can see," and that NI follows HŌ. Cf.,

TŌKU NO HŌ NI KIKOEMASU "One can hear it in the distance."  
 HIDARI NO HŌ NI MIEMASU "One can see it towards the left."  
 UCHI NO HŌ NI ORIMASU "One is at home (as opposed to elsewhere)."  
 SONO MUKŌ NI TAKAI YAMA "There is a high mountain beyond  
 GA ARIMASU (on the other side of) it."

KIRU; HAKU; KABURU; HAMERU

There are a number of verbs in Japanese which are used to express the idea of wearing or putting on, but they are all restricted in their use, that is, according to whether one wears a thing on the head, body, legs, hands, etc., E.g.,

KIRU: "kimono," "haori," coat, overcoat, undershirt, suit, uniform, etc.  
 HAKU: shoes, socks, stockings, trousers, skirt, etc., which cover the legs and feet.  
 KABURU: hat, cap, scarf, etc., which cover the head.  
 HAMERU: gloves, ring, bracelet, etc., which are fitted on one's hand or fingers.  
 KAKERU: necktie, glasses, necklace, etc., which hang from one's neck or are worn on the nose.  
 SURU: belt, sash, gloves, bracelet, necktie, glasses, etc., which are of auxiliary nature. Cf., noun-verbs: BENKYŌ-SURU, SAMPO-SURU, SENTAKU-SURU, or SŌJI-SURU.

Rewrite the following sentences using the adjective clause:

Example:

山本さんは日本語を勉強して居ます。  
日本語を勉強して居るのは山本さんです。

一 私 は 「毎日」と言う新聞を讀んで居ます。

二 私 は 今 散歩 して 居ます。

三 昨日 大へん びづかしい かん字 を 習い ました。

四 高い 山が 遠く の 方 に 見え ます。

五 汽車 が 今 走つて 居ます。

六 青木 さんは 日本服 を 着て 居ます。

七 小山 さんが 自動車 に のつて 居ます。

八 私 は げたを はいて 居ます。

九 おく さんは 手ぶくろ を はめて 居ます。

十 スミス さんは ステッキ を 持つて 居ます。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 29

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Who is the man who was leaning on you a little while ago?
2. I am also going in the same direction as you are.
3. Once it starts to rain, it keeps on raining for about two days.
4. I have regained health since I started taking this medicine.
5. This may be our instructor's book.
6. That man is wearing a suit.
7. Who is the doctor you consulted?
8. That boy is wearing white shoes.
9. Three bridges span this river.
10. That girl is wearing leather gloves.



## Supplementary E-J Translation

### Lesson 29

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. A railroad runs through this town, but at present no trains are running.
2. The Japanese wear wooden clogs when they wear Japanese clothes, but they wear shoes when they wear Western clothes.
3. Do you know the name of the river that flows along the south of this town? Well, I'm not sure, but it may be called White.
4. It is clear and there are no clouds in the sky now, but it may get cloudy later.
5. The train which is now at the station crossed the bridge spanning the lake a little while ago.
6. The one taking a walk wearing a cap and carrying a cane is a student called Cook.
7. When did these students begin studying Japanese? They began (in) July 1947.
8. You must go out with an overcoat and a hat on because it has started to rain.
9. Can you see your school from your house? I can see it on very clear days.
10. What time do you get up every day? I usually get up after the sun has come up and is already light outside.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 30 (Dai sanjikka)

床 (ゆか)	yuka	floor (n.)
有る	aru	to have; to exist; to be (v.i.) (reg. verb)*
誰が落したん ですか	dare ga otoshita n' desu ka	who dropped it? Cf., (AOI) N' DESU, Les. 1*
何か	nani-ka	something; anything (n.) See Les. 24, page 157.*
拾う	hirou	to pick up; to find (v.t.) (reg. verb) Assimilated conj. form: hirotte.
私が拾ったのは	watakushi ga hirotta no wa	what (that which) I picked up. Cf., "aruite iru no wa," Les. 14, page 77.
緑(みどり) の	midori no	green (quasi-adj.)
(Noun)でも(noun) でもありません	(noun)de mo (noun) de mo arimasen	(it) is neither----nor---- (Note the substitution of "mo" where "wa" should be in "(noun) de wa arimasen.") Cf., Les. 19 G.N., ----MO-- ----MO, page 112.*
茶色の	chairo no	brown; light brown (quasi-adj.)
----拾った時	----hirotta toki	when (one) picked up----. (absence of "ni" makes the temporal clause less emphatic) Cf., "shiritai toki ni wa," Les. 17; "donna toki ni," Les. 24; pages 97 and 155.
御はん	gohan	boiled rice; a meal (n.) (See Les. 24, page 156.)
はし	hashi	chopsticks (n.)
茶碗	chawan	rice bowl (n.)
指す	sasu	to point to (at, out); indicate (v.t.) (reg. verb) Cf., Les. 17, page 94.

人差し指	hitosashi-yubi	index finger; forefinger (n.)
指	yubi	finger (n.)
親指	oya-yubi	thumb( n.) [ <u>from "oya," parent,</u> and " <u>yubi," finger</u> ]
中指	naka-yubi	middle finger (n.)
くすり指	kusuri-yubi	ring finger (n.) [ <u>from "kusuri,"</u> medicine, and " <u>yubi" finger</u> ]
小指	kó-yubi	little finger (n.) [ <u>from "ko"</u> (---" <u>chiisai</u> "), little, and " <u>yubi," finger</u> ]
指わ	yubiwa	(finger-) ring (n.)
普通	futsū	ordinarily; normally; usually (adv.)
漢字	kanji	Chinese character (n.) [ <u>from "Kan,"</u> the name of a Chinese dynasty, (KAN), and " <u>ji," character</u> ]
可なり澤山	kanari takusan	quite a few; fairly many (adv.)
おぼえる	oboeru	to commit to memory; learn; remember; know (v.t.) (semi- reg.)
決して-----ない	kesshito----- nai	never; on no occasion (always used with negative verb or adjective) Cf., Les. 23, page 149.
忘れる	wasureru	to forget (v.t.) (semi-reg.)
度々	tabi-tabi	often; repeatedly; frequently (adv.)
かな	kana	Japanese syllabary (n.)
位	gurai	as----as (See Les. 14, G.N., page 79.)
程	hodo	so----as; about as----as; about (See Les. 14, G.N., page 79.)
少い	sukunai	few; little (in quantity) (adj.)

多くも少くも  
ありません

ōku mo sukunaku mo (it) is neither (too) many, nor (too) few. (Note the substitution of "mo" where "wa" should be in "(adj. + ku) wa arimasen." See Les. 5, "kuroku wa arimasen.") Cf., "(noun) de mo (noun) de mo arimasen," above.

丁度いゝ

chōdo ii

just right (Cf., "kaite mo ii n' desu ka," Les. 13; "yoi (ii) tenki," Les. 16)



## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 30 (Dai sanjikka)

#### ARU and NAI or ARIMASEN

In order to yield compounded forms of negative meaning, the imperfective stem is followed by forms of the inflected suffixes NAI and N (NU). The imperfective stem of ARU, "to be," however, never takes the inflected suffixes NAI or N (NU), but is replaced in the negative by the neg. adjective NAI or ARIMASEN, meaning "nonexistent."

#### NANI KA: An indefinite pronoun

The interrogative particle KA is joined to interrogative pronouns and adverbs to form indefinite pronouns and adverbs. (Cf., Les. 24, page 157.) E.g.,

NANI KA	"something (or other)"	DARE KA	"somebody (or other)"
DOKO KA	"somewhere (or other)"	ITSU KA	"sometime (or other)"
DORE KA	"one or other" or "some one thing"	IKURA KA	"a certain amount"; "some"; "a little"
IKU or NAN-(n.c.)-KA,	e.g., NAN-NEN KA,	"some (several) years"	

Compare these with interrogative pronouns and adverbs followed by the particle MO, which is construed with the negative predicate verb or adjective (Cf., page 58). E.g.,

NANI MO	"nothing (anything)"	DARE MO	"nobody"; "everybody"*
DOKO MO	"nowhere"; "everywhere"*	ITSU MO	"any time";* "always"*
DORE MO	"none"; "every one"*	IKURA MO	"not many (much)"; "any amount"*

IKU or NAN-(n.c.)-MO, e.g., NAN-NEN MO, "any number of years."

\*When it is construed with an affirmative predicate (Cf., page 64).

Observe also the difference in meaning between those interrogative pronouns and adverbs and those followed by the particle -DEMO, which is construed with either affirmative or negative predicate (Cf., page 183). E.g.,

NANI DEMO	"anything"; "everything"	DARE DEMO	"anybody"; "everybody"
DOKO DEMO	"anywhere"; "everywhere"	ITSU DEMO	"anytime whatever"
DORE DEMO	"anyone"; "whichever"	IKURA DEMO	"any amount whatever"
IKU or NAN-(n.c.)-DEMO,	e.g., NAN-NEN DEMO,	"any number of years whatever"	

Note: It is well to keep in mind in both the -MO and -DEMO forms the "even" idea conveyed by MO. E.g.,

NANI MO "even what (i.e., even anything; even something)"  
DARE MO "even who (i.e., even someone; even anybody)"

NAN DE MO "even what (i.e., even anything whatsoever; anything at all; everything)"  
DARE DE MO "even anyone; (just) anyone (at all); everybody"

A second point to be noted with regard to indefinite pronouns is the peculiarity of Japanese negative expressions. Thus,

NANI MO ARIMASEN "There is not anything (at all)."  
DARE MO IMASEN "There is not anyone (whatsoever)."

The statement in English, "There is nothing (nobody)," is utterly foreign to the Japanese pattern of thought and expressions. How could "nothing (i.e., not anything) be? Only "something" can be or can not be. Hence, instead of a negative indefinite pronoun with a positive verb ("is nothing"), they always use the positive form of the indefinite pronoun (NANI MO; DARE MO), negation being expressed only by the verb (ARIMASEN; IMASEN; ORIMASEN; NAI). In other words, Japanese has no negative pronouns or adverbs.

MURASAKI NO KAMI DE MO MIDORI NO KAMI DE MO ARI-MASEN

----MO ----MO----MASEN means "(is) neither ----nor----." Therefore, MURASAKI NO KAMI DE MO MIDORI NO KAMI DE MO ARI MASEN means "It is neither purple paper nor green paper." Note that both DE----DE is construed with ARI(MASEN), while MO ---- MO is construed with (ARI)MASEN. (See G.N., Lesson 22, page 138, SONNARA; Lesson 19, page 112, HO----MO.)

HASHI WO MOTSU HŌ NO TE WA MIGI NO TE DE,  
CHAWAN WO MOTSU HŌ NO TE WA HIDARI NO TE DESU

HASHI WO MOTSU HŌ NO TE WA MIGI NO TE DE, CHAWAN WO MOTSU HŌ NO TE WA HIDARI NO TE DESU, means "The hand with which you hold the chopsticks is the right hand, and the hand with which you hold the rice bowl is the left hand." The phrase HŌ NO can be omitted to convey the same idea, but since HŌ means "side" or "one" as opposed to the other (or others) under consideration, HŌ NO always conveys the idea of "as opposed to." Therefore, the literal translation of this sentence will be "The hand with which one holds the chopsticks is the right hand, while (and opposed to this; on the other hand) the hand with which one holds the rice bowl is the left hand." (See G.N., Lesson 29, TŌKU NO HŌ.)

-N' DESU or -NO DESU

As it has been explained in the GRAMMATICAL NOTES for Lesson 21, page 130, -MASHITA and -DESHITA, Japanese verbs concern themselves



primarily with degrees of certainty rather than with differences in tense. -MASU, for instance, emphasizes the verb to which it is joined, while -NO DESU (or -N' DESU) emphasizes the statement it follows. Questions of confirmation or statements of affirmation, therefore, are construed with the phrase -N' DESU or -NO DESU. When the interrogative particle KA is used, however, it must follow the phrase. (See G.N., Lesson 1, AOI N' DESU; Lesson 6, ----DE----DESU). Compare,

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| (a) WATAKUSHI WA ASHITA IKI-MASU    | "I will go (am going) tomorrow."<br>(determinative)                              |
| (b) WATAKUSHI WA ASHITA IKU N' DESU | "I am to go (am going)<br>tomorrow." (factive)                                   |
| (a) ANATA WA KINŌ IKIMASHITA KA.    | "Did you go yesterday?"<br>(simple interrogative)                                |
| (b) ANATA WA KINŌ ITTA N' DESU KA.  | "Did you go yesterday?"<br>(confirmative) Cf., "You<br>went yesterday, did you?" |
| (a) KORE WA TAKAI.                  | "This is high." (simple<br>descriptive)  |
| (b) KORE WA TAKAI N' DESU (-N' DA). | "This is high." (assertive)  |

In answering questions construed with the phrase -NO DESU (KA) or -N' DESU (KA), it is well to use a similar construction. Compare:

Question:

ANATA WA IMA IKU N' DESU KA

Answers:

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| (a) HAI, (WATAKUSHI WA) IMA IKU N' DESU    | "Yes, I'm going now."    |
| (b) IIE, (WATAKUSHI WA) IMA IKANAI N' DESU | "No, I'm not going now." |
| (c) HAI, SŌ DESU                           | "Yes, (I am)."           |
| (d) IIE, SŌ JA ARIMASEN                    | "No, (I'm not)."         |

Question:

ANATA WA IMA IKI-MASU KA.

"Will you go now?"

Answers:

- |                                       |                       |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) HAI, (WATAKUSHI WA) IMA IKI-MASU  | "Yes, I'll go now."   |
| (b) IIE, (WATAKUSHI WA) IMA IKI-MASEN | "No, I won't go now." |
| (c) HAI, IKI-MASU                     | "Yes, I will."        |
| (d) IIE, IKI-MASEN                    | "No, I won't go."     |

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

一、字を書く時使うのは右の手ですか、左の手ですか。

二、一日にかん字をいくつずつ習うのがあなたには丁度いいんですか。

三、あなたはあなたのおじいさんとおばあさんの名前をおぼえて居ますか。

四、物を指す時にはふ通どちらの手のどの指を使いますか。

五、あなたは今日まで習ったかん字を一字もわすれては居ませんか。

六、あなたの洋服は大きいんですか、小さいんですか。

七、茶わんは何に使いますか。

八、一日に何時間位うん動するのが丁度いいんですか。

九、小指は中指位長いんですか。

十、七月は秋ですか、冬ですか。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 30

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. This is neither (my) fourth finger nor (my) little finger.
2. That is neither good nor bad.
3. I cut my thumb with a knife yesterday.
4. The middle finger is the longest finger.
5. I don't remember all of the words I learned last week.
6. Capt Tucker is fast in picking up foreign languages.
7. This is the exact spot where I picked up your pen yesterday.
8. This year is not so cold as last year.
9. That student is different from ordinary students.
10. I don't remember his name.

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 30

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. My wife is picking up the paper which the boy dropped on the floor.
2. That hat is just right for me. I must buy it before I spend (use) my money for something else.
3. I've already forgotten almost half of the characters I learned last month.
4. I forgot to mail the letter I wrote yesterday.
5. The little finger is the shortest of the five fingers.
6. The one wearing the black suit is neither a doctor nor a teacher.
7. This bridge is not so long as the bridge spanning the river over there.
8. When eating a meal, the hand that holds the knife is the right hand, and the hand that holds the fork (FŌKU) is the left hand.
9. Whose wife is that wearing a great hat?
10. He said, "Please use that one," pointing to a wide book on the table.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 31 (Dai sanjūikka)

田中	Tanaka	Tanaka (surname) (p.n.)
芝居(しは居)	shibai	play; dramatic performance; drama (n.)
見た事があります	mita koto ga arimasu	(one) has seen; (one) has had the experience of having seen; (Note that in a question form, it is often translated as, "Has (one) ever seen-----?")*
青木	Aoki	Aoki (surname) (p.n.)
まだ	māda	yet; still; not yet (with neg. pred. Cf., "Iie, mada desu," Les. 18, page 102.
見た事がありま せん	mita koto ga arimasen	(one) has not seen; (one) has not had the experience of having seen; (one) has never seen.*
活動しやしん	katsudō shashin	motion picture; cinema; movie (n.): /from "katsudō," activity, action; and "shashin," photo-graph, picture. Often abbrevi-ated to "katsudo."/
おどり	odori	(Japanese) dance (n.)
如何	ikaga	how (n.)
--は如何ですか	---wa ikaga desu ka	how about----?
え、	ē	Yes (less formal than hai)
ぜひ	zehi	by all means; without fail (adv.)*
見たくはありま せん	mitaku wa arimasen	(one) does not want to see. Cf., "tabetaku wa arimasen," Les. 24; "kuroku wa arimasen," and G.N., Les. 5, page 22.
明晩	myōban	tomorrow evening (night) (adv.)

見に行く	mi ni iku	to go (in order) to see Cf., "hanami ni dekakeru," Les. 20, page 124. Note the use of the conjunctive base of a verb and "ni" with <u>verbs of coming and going</u> to denote the purpose of coming or going.*
積り	tsumori	intention (n.)
見に行く積りです	mi ni iku tsumori desu	it is (one's) intention to go to see; (one) intends (expects, hopes) to go to see; (one) is thinking of going to see.*
いっしょに	issho ni	together (adv.) (Cf., "to issho ni," together with)
行きませんか	ikimasen ka	won't you go? (Note the use of "definite future" in asking with reference to acts of the person spoken to)
有りがとう御座います	arigatō gozaimasu	thank you; much obliged to you. Cf., Les. 5, page 22.
友達(友だち)	tomodachi	friend (n.)
來週	raishū	next week; the coming week (n.)
そうですか	sō desu ka	is that so? (Cf., "hai, sō desu," Les. 1, page 4.
行く積りでした	iku tsumori deshi- ta	it was (one's) intention to go; (one) intended (expected) to go.
あなたが--- 行く のなら	anata ga-----iku no nara	if you are going----- (Cf., "chiisai jibiki nara-----, and "yasashii (adj.) no nara---," Les. 25, p. 166)
私も行きましょう	watakushi mo iki- mashō	(I think, guess, "reckon") I'll go, too. (See G.N., Les. 8, page 40.)
此の間の	kono aida (konaida) no	of the other day; the recent (quasi-adj.)
おんがくかい	ongaku-kai (ongakkai)	concert (n.) / From "ongaku," music; and "kai," meeting, gathering



行きたかつた	iki-takatta	(one) wanted to go (past tense form of "ikitai")*
お客	o-kyaku	caller; visitor; company; guest; customer; patron; client; passenger (n.)
お客があつて	o-kyaku ga atte	having guests; since I had company. See G.N., Lesson 22, page 139, "aruite."*
..あつて....出来 ませんでした	---atte---dekima- sen deshita	since (I) had---, (I) could not--- (Note that the tense of the verb in the conjunctive form is determined by the tense of the main verb)
かぜ	kaze	a cold (n.)
かぜを引く	kaze wo hiku	to catch (contract) a cold
廣田	Hirota	Hirota (surname) (p.n.)
橋本	Hashimoto	Hashimoto (surname) (p.n.)
行かなかつた	ika-nakatta	(one) did not go (past tense form of "ikanai")*
どうして	dōshite	why; how.* (See IKAGA DESU KA)
どうしてでしょう	dōshite deshō	I wonder why?
行くはずでした	iku hazu deshita	(one) was supposed to go; (one) was expected to go. "hazu," like "tsumori" and "no", forms noun clauses; but it expresses reasonable expectation based upon previous understanding or arrangement.)*
用事	yōji	that which one has to do or should do; something to do (or attend to); business (to attend to)(n.)
黒田	Kuroda (Kurota)	Kuroda (Kurota) (surname) (p.n.)
うた	uta	song (n.) But here used in the sense of "singing" or "vocal performance."

大へん	taihen	very; exceedingly; remarkably (adv.)
よかつた	yokatta	(it) was good (past tense form of "yoi")*
ね	ne	isn't it? (word used at the end of a sentence to indicate that agreement or confirmation is expected from the person spoken to.)
うたう	utau	to sing (v.t.) (reg. verb)
それから	sore kara	and then; after; and (conj.)
丸山	Maruyama	Maruyama (surname) (p.n.)
ピアノ	piano	piano (musical instrument); piano (rendition) (n.)
前田	Maeda	Maeda (surname) (p.n.)
そんなに--- ない	sonna ni-----nai	not so; not particularly (adv.) (SONNA is a pronoun; see p. 2)

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 31 (Dai sanjūikka)

#### Present Perfect Tense

As has been explained in the grammatical notes in Lesson 21, page 130, Japanese verbs were originally neutral as to time and concerned themselves primarily with the degree of definiteness. The present perfect tense in English, e.g., "I have bought a book" can be translated in various ways in Japanese as follows, but it must be said that each of these forms has a shade of meaning all its own:

"I have bought a book."

1. WATAKUSHI WA HON WO KATTA KOTO GA ARIMASU  
"I have had the experience of buying a book."  
"I once bought a book."  
"I have purchased books in the past."
2. WATAKUSHI WA (MŌ\*) HON WO KAIMASHITA.  
"I have (already) bought a book."
3. WATAKUSHI WA (MŌ\*) HON WO KATTA NO DESU.  
"The purchasing of a book is (now; already) a fact."
4. WATAKUSHI WA (MŌ\*) HON GA KATTE ARIMASU.  
"I have a book (already) bought."  
"I am (already) in possession of a book, having bought one."
5. WATAKUSHI WA (MŌ\*) HON WO KATTE IMASU.  
"I have my book bought."  
"I am in the state of having purchased a book."
6. WATAKUSHI WA (MŌ\*) HON WO KATTE OKIMASHITA.  
"I (have already) bought a book and have kept it (for future use).\*
7. WATAKUSHI WA (MŌ\*) HON WO KATTE SHIMAIMASHITA.  
"I have (already) finished buying a book."  
"I have bought a book (and already finished with that business).\*

\*The adverbial particle MŌ, "already; now", is preferably used to express the action or state as completed at a time denoted as either the time of speaking or a time spoken of.

ANATA WA SHIBAI WO MITA KOTO GA ARIMASU KA.  
MADA MITA KOTO GA ARIMASEN.

ANATA WA SHIBAI WO MITA KOTO GA ARIMASU KA means "Have you had the experience of seeing a play?" but the translation may be rendered more



idiomatically, "Have you ever seen a play?" By the same token, MADA MITA KOTO GA ARIMASEN which means "(I) have not had the experience of seeing (one) as yet" can be rendered, "(I) have never seen (one)," MITA KOTO GA ARIMASEN, without the MADA, is adequate to express the idea "I have never seen (one)," but MADA, which means "so far" or "as yet," limits the meaning.

### ZEHI ICHIDO MITAI N' DESU

ZEHI means "right and/or wrong," but when it is used as an adverb, it means "by all means," "without fail," "must", "positively" (determinate). When ZEHI, however, is construed with a desiderative verb, e.g., ZEHI------(MI) -TAI, it expresses a strong desire approaching a determination. Therefore, ZEHI ICHIDO MI-TAI N' DESU, may be translated "I must see it once."

### ODORI WA IKAGA DESU KA

IKAGA means "how," "what (to do)", "why (as in IKA NI SHITE: DŌ SHITE)." IKAGA DESU KA by itself affords various interpretations, e.g., "How do you do?" It can also be the elliptical form of IKAGA DESU KA (SHIRIMASEN), "(I don't know) how or what it is."

When it is construed with a noun, pronoun, or noun equivalent followed by the particle -WA (or -GA), (-WA)-IKAGA DESU KA, can be translated "How about---." Therefore, ODORI WA IKAGA DESU KA means "How about a Japanese dance?"

### MI NI IKU

The particle NI joined to the conjunctive base of verbs and followed by verbs of motion, such as IKU, "go"; KURU, "come"; KAERU, "return", MAWARU, "go around"; AGARU, "go up"; ORIRU, "go down"; DEKAKERU, "set forth" or "start out"; ARUKU, "to walk"; etc., denotes the purpose of going, coming, etc. E.g.,

TŌRI NI IKU	"go to get (take)"	MAIRAI NI KURU	"come to learn"
OSHIE NI IKU	"go to teach"	MI NI KURU	"come to see"
KIKI NI MAWARU	"go around asking"	URI NI ARUKU	"walk about selling"
(BENKYŌ)-SHI	"return to do (some studying)"		
NI KAERU			
MI NI IKU	"go to see"		

-TAKATTA: the past tense of -TAI

The desiderative suffix -TAI (conjunctive base suffix), like the familiar negative suffix -NAI (imperfective base suffix) and the intransitive verb HOSHII "to desire," is conjugated exactly as a predicate adjective, (See G.N., Lesson 24, pages 159 and 160.) E.g.,



<u>Affirmative</u>	<u>Familiar</u>	<u>Polite</u>
Present tense	(IKI)-TAI	(IKI)-TAI N' DESU
Past tense	(IKI)-TAKATTA	(IKI)-TAKATTA N' DESU
Conjunctive	(IKI)-TAKUTE	(IKI)-TAI N' DE
Conditional	(IKI)-TAKEREBA	(IKI)-TAI N' DE ARIMASUREBA*

### Negative

Present tense	(IKI)-TAKU NAI	(IKI)-TAKU-NAI N' DESU (-TAKU-ARI-MASEN)
Past tense	(IKI)-TAKU NAKATTA	(IKI)-TAKU NAKATTA N' DESU
Conjunctive	(IKI)-TAKU NAKU TE	(IKI)-TAKU NAI N' DE
Conditional	(IKI)-TAKU NAKEREBA	(IKI)-TAKU NAI N' DE ARIMASUREBA*

\*These forms are not used very much. The familiar forms are used instead.

### O-KYAKU GA ATTE: Weak causal clause

The conjunctive (-TE) form sometimes signifies cause or reason. O-KYAKU GA ATTE IKU KOTO GA DEKIMASEN DESHITA, therefore, means, "having guests, I was not able to go," or "I wasn't able to go, as I had guests." Compare:

KAZE WO HIITE IKU KOTO GA DEKIMASEN DESHITA	"Having caught a cold, I was unable to go."
YŌJI GA ATTE IKANAKATTA SŌ DESU	"I understand that he did not go, as he had some business to attend to."
AME GA FUTTE KOMARIMASHITA	"I was in a predicament, since it rained."

It must be remembered, however, that -TE is primarily a coordinate conjunctive suffix (or particle) and the causal idea is present only because the predicate or clause that follows it explains the consequence. Therefore, it corresponds closely to the English conjunction "and" which is used in the sense of "and so." It is advisable, for this reason, to use KARA when it is necessary to indicate the relation of cause and effect with precision. E.g., O-KYAKU GA ATTA KARA, IKU KOTO GA DEKIMASEN DESHITA. (See G.N., Lesson 15, NAZE and KARA, page 84.)

### TSUMORI

TSUMORI is a noun particle or nominalizer which means "what one entertains in his mind." Hence it is, according to context, translated variously as "intention," "thought," "hope," "purpose," "expectation," "opinion," "idea," "calculation," etc.

Observe that TSUMORI is always treated as a noun. A sentence placed in front of it is actually a relative clause (See G.N., Lesson 17, JIKAN WO SHIRITAI TOKI), and the predicate form is construed with -DESU or DEARIMASU, which is, needless to say, subject to conjugation. TSUMORI DESU, therefore, means "one intends (means, hopes, expects) to" or "one is entertaining the idea (belief, assumption) of."

### HAZU

HAZU is also a noun particle or nominalizer which originally meant "the notch or nock" in the arrow (YA-HAZU) in which the bowstring fits, also the notch or nock in the bow for the string; hence extended to mean: fitness; common course of events; what is expected; necessity or obligation. Therefore, according to context, "be due to," "be to," "be supposed to," "must," "ought to," "should," "be expected to," etc.

Note that HAZU is always treated as a noun, that a sentence placed in front of it is a relative clause, and that the predicate form is always construed with -DESU or DEARIMASU. IKU HAZU DESHITA, therefore, means "should have gone (because one was scheduled to)."

### NE

NE is used at the end of a sentence to indicate that agreement or confirmation is expected from the person spoken to. E.g.,

II TENKI DESU NE. "Fine weather, isn't it?  
(Usually a positive answer is expected.)

When NE is used within a sentence, the effect is "You follow me so far, don't you?" It is particularly prevalent in telephone conversations. E.g.,

KANAYA SAN NO (NE) JIDŌSHA WA  
(NE) TAIJEN ATARASHI'N  
"Mr. Kanaya's car is very new."

It does not exactly require an answer, but is usually countered with HE, E, Ē, MARUHODO, and the like, to whatever extent the listener regards as necessary.

Convert the following sentences into one sentence:

一、病氣です。いしやにかゝりました。

二、昨晚おそく休みました。今朝早くおきる。ことが出来ませんでした。

三、今晚友だちの家へ行く。積りでした。用事があります。行けません。

四、日本の活動は見たことがあります。日本のしば居は見たことがありません。

五、私はかぜを引きました。休んで居ます。おんがくかいへ行くことが出来ません。

六、おどりが見たいんです。今日はひまがありません。明晩行きましょう。

七、日本語はやさしいんです。二年位で習えましょう。

八、朝早くおきる。からだにいいんです。

九、花が買いたい。花屋へ行かなければなりません。

十、たくさんごはんを食べる。からだにわるいんです。か、い、ん、ですか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 31

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. I've never seen Mrs. Dong.
2. I've never been to Japan.
3. Have you ever seen a Japanese movie?
4. I went to the book store to buy a magazine day before yesterday.
5. I intend to be in this school one year.
6. I had some business to attend to this morning.
7. They say Mr. Matsumoto's piano (rendition) was very good.
8. A letter should be coming around tomorrow.
9. I understand it wasn't so cold last winter.
10. Have you ever taken singing lessons?



## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 31

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. I have to go to Mr. Maeda's house as I have some business to attend to, but I can't go because I have a cold now.
2. I understand you've never been to Japan, but you're very good in Japanese, aren't you?
3. I've seen Japanese movies, but I've never seen a Japanese play.
4. I should have been doing my exercises from 3 o'clock, but I couldn't because it started to rain.
5. Why didn't you go to see the dance (recital)?
6. If you have company now, you can't go for a walk with me, can you?
7. If you have nothing to do tonight, won't you go with me to see a movie? I don't have anything to do, but I may have company.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 32 (Dai sanjūni-ka)

アブラハム	Aburahamu	Abraham (p.n.)
リンカン	Rinkan	Lincoln (p.n.)
今から---前	ima kara----mae	----ago (lit., from now ---ago)
百二十年	hyaku-nijū-nen	120 years
程	hodo	about; or thereabouts (Cf., "jidōsha hodo----", Les. 14 G.N., page 79.)
合衆國(がっしゅうこく)	gasshūkoku	the United States (n.)
アメリカ合衆國	Amerika Gasshūkoku	the United States of America (p.n.)
ケンタッキー	Kentakki	Kentucky (p.n.)
州	shū	state (n.)
ハーデイン	Hādein	Hardin (p.n.)
群	gun	county (n.)
生れる	umareru	to be born ( <u>v.i.</u> ) (semi-reg.)*
おじいさん	ojii-san (ojī-san)	grandfather (n.) (Cf., "ojii-san" Les. 13, page 86)
ヴァージニア	Vajinia	Virginia (p.n.)
(に) うつる	(ni) utsuru	to move (to) ( <u>v.i.</u> ) (reg. verb)
お父さん	otō-san	father (n.) (polite form used in direct address, or in referring to him in one's own family, or in referring to other people's father. The form "chichi" is used in referring to one's own father in conversing with people of another family of equal or higher status.)
まで	made	until (Cf., "----kara----made" Les. 8, page 38)

同州	dō-shū	the same state (n.)
(に) 住む	(ni) sumu	to live or reside (in) (v.i.) (reg. verb) (progressive form with "iru" is always used to express the simple present tense) (persisting state implied)
インディアナ	Indeiana	Indiana (p.n.)
小さい時	chiisai toki	childhood (days); when (one was a little (child) (n.))
がくもん	gakumon	learning; study (n.)
家	uchi	family (n.) (Cf., "ie" or "uchi", Les. 9, page 44.)
ひじょうに	hijō-ni	extremely; very (adv.)
びんぼう	bimbō	poverty (n.)
びんぼうです	bimbō desu	is poor
がっこう	gakkō	school (n.)
がくもんをする	gakumon wo suru	to pursue one's studies; to acquire an education
と	to	thus; that (particle which indicate what is said, thought, etc. See Les. 12, page 61)
思う	omou	to think (v.t.) (reg. verb)
---たいと思う	---tai to omotte	hoping to---; wishing to---
一人で	hitori de	alone; by oneself (adv.) (Cf., "de" of "nama de", Les. 24, page 155)
一家	ikka	one's family, one's folks (n.)
イリノイ	Irinōi	Illinois (p.n.)
或時は---又或時は	aru toki wa--- mata aru toki wa	at times---at other times---; sometimes---at other times
又	mata	again
人	hito	other people; others (n.) (Cf., "hito", man, Les. 9; and people Les. 12)

に	ni	by (particle indicating the principal actor or agent of a passive verb)*
やとう	yatōu	to employ; to hire (v.t.) (reg. v.)
やとわれる	yatowareru	to be employed; to be hired (passive form of "yatou", above) Note that the passive suffix "-reru" is always semi-regular.*
人にやとわれて	hito ni yatowarete	(being) employed by others (adverbial phrase)
働く	hataraku	to work; toil; labor (v.i.) (reg. v.)
しょう人	shōnin	merchant; business man (n.)
しょうばい	shōbai	commercial pursuits; business; trade (n.)
やる	yaru	to do; undertake; perform (v.t.) (reg. verb) (used often in place of "suru" but less polite)
しょうばいをやる	shōbai'wo yaru	to engage in business
だんだん	dan-dan	gradually; step by step (adv.)
〈		repetition sign for two or more syllables, or a phrase
有名になる	yūmei ni naru	to become famous; to acquire fame
とうとう	tō-tō	finally; ultimately; in the end (adv.)
だいとうりょう	daitōryō	President (n.)
に	ni	particle denoting result, the point of arrival of an action, or the objective complement.
えらぶ	erabu	to choose; select; elect (v.t.) (reg. verb)



えらばれる	erabareru	to be elected (passive form of "erabu," above)*
だいとうりょうに えられました	daitōryō ni era- baremashita	(one was elected President (note that depending upon context this may be translated, "He was chosen by the President." See "ni", by, above)
---になつて居る	----ni natte iru toki ni	when /while, during the time when one was----(lit., at the time when one had become and was---)7
有名な	yūmei na	famous (quasi-adj.)
南北	nan-boku	north-south; north and south
せんそう	sensō	war (n.)
南北せんそう	namboku sensō	the Civil War (p.n.)
おこる	okoru	to break out; occur; take place (v.i.) (reg. verb)
たゝかう	tatakau	to fight (v.i.) (reg. verb)
つづく	tsuzuku	to continue; last (v.i.) (reg. verb)
かつ	katsu	to win; (v.i.) (reg. verb)
まける	makeru	to lose (v.i.) (semi-reg. verb)
それですから	sore desu kara	because of that; thus; therefore; accordingly
はじめのうちは	hajime no uchi wa	at first; in the beginning
人達	hitotachi	people (n., plural)
(に)よく思われる	(ni) yoku omo- wareru	to be thought well of (by); to be well regarded (by)*
から	kara	by; from (Cf., particle denoting the point of origin. "----kara ----made----", Les. 8)*
(から)悪く言われ る	(kara) waruku iwareru	to be spoken ill of (by).*
或時	aru toki	once; on one occasion; once upon a time (adv.)

フォーズ座	Fōzu-za	Ford's Theatre (p.n.)
ジョン	Jon	John (p.n.)
ブース	Būsu	Booth (p.n.)
者	mono	person; fellow; man (n.) (less polite than "kata" or "hito")
ピストル	pisutoru	pistol (n.)
うつ	utsu	to shoot; fire; discharge (as of guns) (v.t.) (reg. verb)
うたれる	utareru	to be shot (passive form of "utsu", above)*
すぐに	sugu ni	immediately; at once (adv.)
送られる	okurareru	to be sent (passive form of "okuru" to send)*
手あて	teate	(medical) attention; treatment; care; aid (n.)
うける	ukeru	to receive; be given; undergo (v.t.) (semi-reg. verb)
なくなる	nakunaru	to pass away; die (v.i.) (reg. verb)

# GRAMMATICAL NOTES

## Lesson 32 (Dai sanjuni-ka)

### (Place)-NI UMARE-MASHITA

The intransitive verb UMAREMASU is construed with either DE or NI to indicate the place where a person is born, but DE is preferred in the spoken style. E.g.,

WATAKUSHI WA AMERIKA DE (or NI) UMAREMASHITA.  
 "I was born in America."

### The passive voice: RERU and RARERU

The passive voice is formed by suffixing -RERU to the imperfective base of regular verbs; and -RARERU to the imperfective base of the semi-regular verbs and of the irregular verbs.

The following shows the conjugation of RERU and RARERU:

Bases	Passive Suffixes	
	RERU	RARERU
Imperfective	RE	RARE
Conjunctive	RE	RARE
Conclusive	RERU	RARERU
Attributive	RERU	RARERU
Conditional	RERE	RARERE
Imperative	RE(RO) or RE(YO)	RARE(RO) or RARE(YO)

Note that the conjugation of RERU and RARERU is the same as that of the semi-regular verb.

	Active	Passive
Regular Verbs	YATOU (to employ)	YATOWA-RENU (to be employed)
	ERABU (to choose)	ERABA-RENU (to be chosen)
	UTSU (to shoot)	UTA-RENU (to be shot)
	OMOU (to think)	OMOA-RENU (to be thought)
	IU (to say; tell)	IWA-RENU (to be told)
Semi-Regular Verbs	MIRU (to see)	MI-RARENU (to be seen)
	TABERU (to eat)	TABE-RARENU (to be eaten)
Irregular Verbs	KURU (to come)	KO-RARENU
	SURU (to do)	SE-RARERU or SA-RENU (contraction of SE-RARERU)



When the verb is in the passive voice, the direct agent of the act is indicated by the particle NI, while the subject which is acted upon is indicated by the particle WA or GA (or sometimes MO, DAKE, etc.)  
E.g.,

WATAKUSHI WA ANO HITO NI MIRAREMASHITA.

"I was seen by that person."

("That person saw me.")

SAKANA WA NEKO NI TABERAREMASHITA.

"The fish was eaten up by a cat."

("The cat ate up the fish.")

The object of the verb is indicated by the particle WO. E.g.,

WATAKUSHI WA HITO NI PEN WO TORAREMASHITA.

"I had (my) pen stolen by someone."

("Somebody stole my pen.")

The owner of the object stolen may be omitted when understood, from the circumstances or the context. Even when the object is placed at the beginning of the sentence, it is preferable to use the particle WO instead of WA in such a context. E.g.,

HITO NI PEN WO TORAREMASHITA.

"(I, he, etc.) had (my or his) pen stolen by someone."

("Somebody stole my or his pen.")

Observe that the agent of the passive verb is always animate, e.g., men, beasts, birds, etc., but a personified inanimate agent is sometimes used. E.g.,

WATAKUSHI-DOMO WA O-TSUKI-SAN NI MIRAREMASHITA

"We were seen by Mr. Moon." ("The moon saw us.")

MINAMI NO SHŪ NO HITOTACHI NI WA YOKU OMOWAREMASEN DESHITA.  
ARU HITOTACHI KARA WA WARUKU IMAREMASHITA.

When the verb is in the passive voice, the agent of the act (described by the verb) is indicated by the particle NI, which is translated in English, "by." Sometimes, however, the word KARA is used instead to indicate the point of origin. KARA means "from," but it must also be translated in English, "by" for smooth translation.

It must be noted, however, that NI can be used at all times. While KARA is restricted in its use. E.g.,

"He was not well regarded by the people of the southern states."

MINAMI NO SHŪ NO HITOTACHI NI WA YOKU OMOWAREMASEN DESHITA

MINAMI BO SHŪ NO HITOTACHI KARA WA YOKU OMOWAREMASEN DESHITA.



"He was spoken ill of by some people."

ARU HITORACHI NI WA WARUKU IWAREMASHITA.

ARU HITOTACHI KARA WA WARUKU IWAREMASHITA

### TÔTÔ

TÔTÔ, which is translated variously according to according to context as, "in the end," "finally," "at last," "after all," etc., can modify verbs which express the desirable as well as the undesirable.

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 32

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Who is the present President of the United States of America? In what state was he born? And (then) when was he elected (chosen as) President?
2. I understand that Mr. Smith's grandfather came from England about 80 years ago, and lived in the state of Virginia until about 1900.
3. When war broke out between the United States and Japan, I moved to a western state as I wanted to study Japanese.
4. Although at first Lincoln was spoken ill of by some people, later he was thought well of by all.
5. Since I don't like to work employed by others, I intend to get into business by myself.
6. What is the name the man who engaged himself in the business of manufacturing automobiles and became very famous?
7. Although Germany (DO-I-TSU) fought hard, she finally lost in the spring of 1945.
8. Formerly it was almost impossible for the poor to acquire learning. However, anyone can acquire learning nowadays.
9. After the weather clears up (improves), I wish to cycle (to go on bicycles) with (my) friend to the nearby town.
10. About how long did the last (kono mae no) war last (continue)? It lasted from 1914 to 1918. Therefore, it lasted 4 years.

11. After leaving home, I worked summers for (hiring myself out to) others (people), and I went to school and continued my studies from autumn to spring.

12. At first Japanese was very difficult, but it gradually became easier.

13. When he was small, Mr. Hirota was sickly and frequently fell ill, but at present he is very healthy.

14. Most (taitei no) maladies can be cured if they are treated by a doctor early.

15. Have you ever had the desire to become President? Yes, I have.

16. It's already September, so probably it will gradually get cooler.

17. I don't want to be thought ill of by my friends.

18. My family moved to an eastern state when the war broke out.

19. Father, do you know who shot Lincoln with a pistol?

20. I understand that those who fought a long time in Europe won't be sent to Asia.

Answer the following questions in full:

- 一、アメリカ合衆（がつしゅう）國の今の大統領（だいとうりよう）は誰ですか。
- 二、リンカンは何故（なぜ）死んでからも國の人達によく思はれるのですか。
- 三、あなたは重い病氣の時には誰の手あてをうけますか。
- 四、なくなつた大とうりよう（の）フランクリン・ローズベルトは何度大とうりようにならばれましたか。
- 五、あなたはいつ此のがつこうにおくられましたか。
- 六、アメリカ合衆國の大とうりようの中で有名な人々の名を言つて御らんなさい。
- 七、あなたのお父（とう）さんは今どの州（しゅう）に住んで居ますか。
- 八、あなたは何州何郡に生まれましたか。
- 九、一九四八年には誰がアメリカの大とうりようにならばれると思いますか。
- 十、あなたは來年のいつごろ日本へ送られると思いますか。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 32

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. I was shot in the hand.

2. He has never been spoken ill of by his friends.

3. We may be sent to Japan.

4. Mr. Truman may be elected President of the United States of America in 1948

5. The war broke out when Mr. Roosevelt was President.

6. Where does your family live?

7. This student has liked to study Japanese ever since the time he was sent here.

8. I've been engaged in this business for five years (now).

9. At first my students didn't understand any thing.

10. Wishing to see that play once more, I went again last night.

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 32

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. At first Japanese was very difficult, but it gradually became easier.
2. Have you ever had the desire to become general? Yes, I have.
3. I understand that those who were taught in this school were sent to Japan.
4. Who is the present President of the United States of America? In what state was he born? When did he become the President?
5. I understand that Mr. Green's grandfather came from England about 90 years ago, and lived in the state of Virginia untill about 1900.
6. When war broke out between the United States and Japan, I came to this school as I wanted to teach Japanese.
7. Although at first Lincoln was spoken ill of by some people, later he ~~was~~ thought well of by all.
8. What is the name of the man who engaged himself in the business of manufacturing automobiles and became very famous?
9. Al though Japan fought hard, she finally lost in the summer of 1945.
10. Formerly it was almost impossible for the poor to acquire learning. However, anyone (everyone) can acquire learning nowadays.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 33 (Dai sanjūsan-ka)

長町	Nagamachi	(a family name) (p.n.)
中西	Nakanishi	(a family name) (p.n.)
會話	kaiwa	conversation (n.)
パーマー	Pāma	Palmer (パーマー used in the text is meant to be パーマー)
大村	Ōmura	(a family name) (p.n.)
譯(訳)する	yakusuru	to translate (v.t.) (irreg. cf., "suru")
いや	iya	well; oh, no
---たんじやない んです	---ta n' ja nai n' desu	corrupt form of---ta no de wa nai no desu (Lit. It is not that (I) (verb past tense)
友達	tomodachi	friend (n.)
貸す	kasu	to lend; rent (v.t.) (reg. verb)
もらう	morau	to have something given one; to get; to receive (v.t.) (reg. verb)*
---てもらう	---te morau	to get or have (a person do some- thing for one)*
借りる	kariru	to borrow (v.t.) (semi-reg. verb)
---ばかりです	----ta bakari desu	(have) just; just now; only. Cf., Les, 28, page 191
---かりたばかりで	----karita bakaride	having just borrowed it
中	naka	the inside (n.)
まだ---中を 読んで見ません から	mada---naka wo yonde mimasen kara	(I) haven't read it yet, so---.
分かりません	wakarimasen	cannot tell; do not know

だ	da	familiar form of "desu", "to be"
二三日	ni-san-nichi	two or three days; few days
くれる	kureru	to give /more familiar than KUDASARU. (See G.N., Les. 4, page 17.) (v.t.) (semi-reg.)
---てくれる	----te kureru	(verb) to me or for me
外の	hoka no	other; another; different (adj.)
外の人	hoka no hito	others, a third person
---譯(訳) には いきません(---まい りません)	---wake ni wa iki- masen (or mairi- masen)	can't very well----(shows inability due to circumstantial, physical, moral, conventional, etc. reason)*
-ね	--ne	"you see," "can I?" "do(n't) you think?" (here "-ne" softens the force of the refusal of the request for the loan of the book)
それもそうですね	sore mo sō desu ne	That's true, too, isn't it?
じゃ	ja	corrupt form of "de wa"; well then; in that case *
どこでも	doko demo	anywhere; everywhere. Cf., Les. 27, page 183.
角	kādo	corner (n.)
大正堂	Taishōdō (Taiseidō)	(name of a book store) ("do", "hall", "shrine", "temple", is frequently used as a suffix for the name of a book store)
---ますまい	--masu mai	"I do not think," "I suppose not," "probably not" Negative future (improbable) Cf., -masen desho.*
晴りに(かえりに)	kaeri ni	on the way back; on the way home
東京堂	Tōkyōdō	(name of a book store)
(へ, に) よる	(e, ni) yoru	to drop in (at); to stop in (at) (v.i.) (reg. verb)



- から	-kara	"you see", "you know" (Placed at the end of a causal clause expressing an after thought)
竹原(たけはら)	Takehara	(family name) (p.n.)
和英	Wa-Ei	Japanese-English
字書	jisho	dictionary (n.) (somewhat more literary than "jibiki")
三四日	san-yok-ka	three or four days
神田	Kanda	(a ward in Tōkyō) (p.n.)
古本屋	furu-hon-ya	a second-hand book store
神田の古本屋で	Kanda no furu-hon-ya de	at a second-hand book store in Kanda
新しい	atarashii	new; fresh (adj.)
----- じゃ ありませんか	(v. or adj.)-ja arimasen ka	wouldn't you say (so); can't you see? there you are! (a rhetorical question)
新しい事は新しいんです	atarashii koto wa atarashii n' desu	it is new all right.*
よごれる	yogoreru	to become soiled, dirty, stained (v.i.) (semi-reg. verb)
五十銭	go-jis-sen	50 sen
まける	makeru	to reduce (the price); to make (it) cheaper (v.t.) (semi-reg. verb)
にする	ni suru	to make (it)-----.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 33

#### MORAU

MORAU basically means "to receive" (usually from an equal or inferior; often even from a superior). E.g.,

WATAKUSHI WA KINŌ TŌKYŌ NO TOMODACHI KARA TEGAMI WO  
MORAI-MASHITA

"I received a letter yesterday from my friend in  
Tōkyō."

WATAKUSHI WA KYŌ OTŌSAN KARA HON WO MORAI-MASHITA

"I received a book today from my father."

We have already seen that the forms IRU and ARU, following the conjunctive (TE) forms, lose their full meaning value "to be" and merely assist in rendering the progressive or persisting state or condition. Similarly, the form KUDASAI, used after the conjunctive (TE) forms, helps in expressing a request. MORAU is also used after the TE-forms of the verbs.

It should be noted that, when the verb MORAU is used after the TE-forms of the verbs, the benefactor is designated grammatically by the particle NI. The translations are best rendered by the construction "to have (someone)" (verb). E.g.,

ISHA NI\* KITE MORAI-MASHITA

"(We) had the doctor come."

\*Note that NI denotes the actor or benefactor (of an action indicated by the TE-form).

#### TE-form + MIRU

MIRU basically means "to see," but it means "to try to" or "to try and" when used after the conjunctive or TE-forms of the verbs. E.g.,

"KUSURI WO NONDE MINASAI."

"(Please) try to drink some medicine."

Cf., TE-form + GORAN-MASAI, Les. 7, page 32.

#### ----WAKE NIWA IKIMASEN

WAKE basically means "reason," "circumstance" or "cause," but when it is used as a nominalizer at the end of clauses, it loses its full meaning value and gives the extended meaning. ----WAKE NIWA

IKIMASEN means "cannot help" or "can't very well." However, WAKE GA NAI means "to have no reason for" or "not to deserve." E.g.,

ANO HITO NO KURU WAKE GA NAI

"There is no reason why he should come."

WATAKUSHI WA BENKYŌ-SHINAI WAKE NIWA IKIMASEN.

"I cannot help but studying."

IMA EIGO WO HANASU WAKE NIWA IKIMASEN

"(I) can't very well speak English now."

### JA (conjunction)

JA or JĀ is sometimes the abbreviation of the conjunction DEWA (well, in that case); and SOREJA or SOREJĀ are used for SORE DEWA (well, then).

### -MAI

-MAI is used after the conclusive or attributive stem of a regular verb or after the imperfective stem of a semi-regular or irregular verb to express negative conjecture or negative determination. (-MAI follows the imperfective SHI of SURU.) -MAI may also follow the polite present form in -MASU. E.g.,

KYŌ WA FUJISAN MO MIEMASUMAI

"Today even Fujisan may not be visible." or

"Today Fujisan also may not be visible."

### ATARASHII KOTO WA ATARASHII

KOTO WA, with repetition of the same verb, adjective, or quasi-adjective both before and after it, admits that a statement is "to be sure" true. E.g.,

ATARASHII KOTO WA ATARASHII.

"It is sure that (it) is new."

"It is new all right."

Answer the following questions in full:

- 一、古本屋では新しい本も賣つて居ますか。
- 二、よごれた本なら安く買うことが出来ますか。
- 三、本屋では古い本なら少しまけるでしょうか。
- 四、あなたの日本語の字書は外の人に貸す紙にはいきませんか。
- 五、今では肉は毎日買えないでしょうか。
- 六、あなたが昨日買ったばかりのりんごはどこで賣つて居ますか。
- 七、あなたが今勉強して居る日本語の本は誰が書いたんですか。
- 八、あなたは今第三十四課を訳することが出来ますか。
- 九、あなたの自動車を貸してもらふことは出来ませんか。
- 十、あなたは洋服やぼうしは大抵どこで買いますか。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 33

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. I just had my lunch.
2. A man who just got back from Japan came over last night.
3. I can't very well keep it from him, I'm afraid.
4. I can't very well move right away, as I can't find a house.
5. I'll stop in at the book store on the way home (and see).
6. I bought a lot of fruit and vegetables on the way home.
7. I don't think it will rain today.
8. Who translated this?
9. When did you borrow this?
10. I had a friend write a letter in Japanese for me.
11. My friend lent me this.
12. My instructor taught this for me.
13. Whom did you hear that from?

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 33

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Are you studying Japanese by yourself? No, I'm having Mr. Kumamoto teach me.
2. Why didn't you go to the Japanese movie Tuesday afternoon? I couldn't very well go to see it, as I had to translate Les. 33.
3. Did you have something to attend to? No, I didn't have anything to do, but I had a slight cold, you see.
4. Well, it's easy all right, but you probably can't learn it all in one year.
5. I had Mr. Munakata translate the book you lent me.
6. The Japanese reader which Mr. Naganuma wrote is not too new, but since it's a very good book, I can't very well give it to you.
7. Mr. Takimoto likes to have you drop in at his house on your way home.
8. I hear that Mr. Takimoto has many good books. Don't you wish to drop in at his house on your way home to borrow the books?

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 34 (Dai sanjū-shika)

原田	Harada	(a family name) (p.n.)
かお色	kaoiro	complexion (n.)
かお色が悪い	kaoiro-ga-warui	to look pale
---ようです	---yō desu	it seems that; it appears that*
どうかしましたか	dōka shimashita ka	Is something the matter (with you)? Cf., NANIKA, Les. 24, page 157
西村	Nishimura	(a family name) (p.n.)
風邪(かぜ)	kazé	a cold (n.)
風邪を引く	kazé-wo-hiku	to catch a cold
-と見える	-to mieru	it seems as if; it looks to me that; (v.i.)
-と見えて	-to miete	apparently-----; it seems to me that-----.
ずつり	zutsū	headache (n.)
ずつりがする	zutsū-ga-suru	to have a headache (v.i.)
それはいけません	sore wa ikemasen	That's too bad, isn't it?; sorry to hear it.
ねつ	netsū	fever (n.)
大した	taishita	serious; considerable; great; re- markable (adj.)
大したこと ありません	taishita koto wa arimasen	It's not serious; it's of no consequence
せき	sekí	cough (n.)
せきが出る	sekí-ga-déru	to have a cough
のど	nódo	throat (n.)
いたい(んです)	itai (n' desu)	(to be) painful (adj.); to hurt

それじゃ	sore ja	corrupt form of "sore de wa"; well then; that being the case
呼ぶ	yobú	to call; summon; send for (v.t.) (reg. verb)
--方がいゝでしょう	-hō ga ii deshō	I think it would be better to---.
そうですね	sō desu ne	you're right (I guess); (also used, when thinking, to mean, "Well, let's see")
女中	jochū	maid (n.)
---ように	---yō ni	so as to; so that; (so as) to; (so) that (adv.)*
---ように言つて 下さい	--yō ni itte kudasai	please tell---to---(used with attributive stem of verbs in indirect requests or commands)*
---せる	---seru	causative suffix joined to the imperfective base of regular verbs: to have (one); to make (one); to cause (one); to allow (one); to let (one).*
言わせる	iwaseru	to have (one) say; to have (one) tell.*
持つて來させる	motte ko saseru	to have (make; let) one bring.*
---させる	---saseru	causative suffix joined to the imperfective base of semi-regular verbs and irreg. verbs. Cf., -seru*
中村屋	Nakamura-ya	(name of a store) (p.n.)
パン	pan	bread (n.)
歸りに	kaerini	on the way bak; on the way home.
斤	kin	a measure of weight equalling 1.32 pounds, (三斤 SANGIN).
ゐす	rusú	absence; (away from home); out (n.)
ゐすだ	rusú da	to be absent (or away from home) (DA; to be)



お晝すぎ	o-hiru sugi	afternoon*
たのむ	tanomu	to request; ask (a favor) (v.t.) (reg. verb)
---たら	---tara	when*
---たらすぐ	---tara sugu	as soon as; immediately upon*
台所	daidokoro	kitchen (n.)
客間	kyakuma	parlor (a room where guests are entertained) (n.)
すむ	sūmu	to be finished (v.i.) (reg. verb)
かたづける	katazukeru	to tidy up; put in order (v.t.) (semi-reg. verb)*
させる	saseru	causative form of "suru", to do (here it indicates permission, "let (one) do (it)"*)
お晝	o-hiru	noon; lunch*
仕度	shitaku	preparations; arrangements (n.)
仕度をする	shitaku wo suru	to make preparations; get ready
お湯	o-yu	hot water (n.)*
わかす	wakasu	to boil or heat (liquids) (v.t.) (reg. verb)
置く	oku	to put; place; set
---て置く	-te oku	to do things for future use, need or reference*

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 34

#### YŌ DESU

YŌ DA and YŌ DESU, following the present and past conclusive and attributive forms of verbs and adjectives, the attributive stem of quasi-adjectives in NA or NO, and substantives plus NO express likelihood or seemingness: "to look as if," "to appear to be," "to seem to be." E.g.,

ANO HITO WA SENSEI NO YŌ-DESU  
"That fellow looks like a teacher."

AME GA FURU YŌ-DESU  
"It looks like rain."

ANO INU WA WARUI YŌ-DESU.  
"That dog seems to be bad."

#### YŌ NI

The construction YŌ NI plus a verb conveys a purposive meaning: (to arrange or fix something) "so that".

BENKYŌ SURU YŌ NI ITTE KUDASAI  
"Please tell (him) to study."  
Lit: "Please tell (him) so that he will study."

#### Causative inflected suffixes: SERU and SASERU

The causative is formed by adding the inflected suffixes SERU and SASERU to the proper imperfective forms. SERU is attached to the imperfective stem of the regular verbs. SASERU is attached to the imperfective stem of the semi-regular and irregular verbs.

	Active	Causative
Regular Verbs	IU (to say)	IWA-SERU ((to have (one) say))
	KAU (to buy)	KAWA-SERU ((to have (one) buy))
	WAKASU (to boil)	WAKASA-SERU ((to have (one) boil))
	KAKU (to write)	KAKA-SERU ((to have (one) write))

	Active	Causative
Semi-regular Verbs	KATAZUKERU (to put in order)	KATAZUKE-SASERU ((to have (one) put in order))
	AKERU (to open)	AKE-SASERU ((to have (one) open))
	MIRU (to see)	MI-SASERU ((to have (one) see))
Irregular Verbs	KURU (to come)	KO-SASERU ((to have (one) come))
	SURU (to do)	SASERU (contraction of SE-SASERU) ((to have (one) do))

The resulting forms in SERU and SASERU are treated as semi-regular verbs.

The following shows the conjugation of SERU and SASERU:

Bases	Causative Suffixes	
	-SERU	-SASERU
Imperfective	-SE	-SASE
Conjunctive	-SE	-SASE
Conclusive	-SERU	-SASERU
Attributive	-SERU	-SASERU
Conditional	-SERE	-SASERE
Imperative	-SE(YO) or -SE(RO)	-SASE(YO) or -SASE(RO)

The Japanese nouns that appear in English translation as the objects of the verb "cause," "have," "make," or "let" are followed by the particle NI. E.g.,

GAKUSEI NI NIHONGO WO KAKASERU

"Make students write Japanese."

#### Nouns in honorific: Use of Prefix O

Nouns may be made honorific by prefixing O. Thus changed, they name persons that are identified with or persons and things that are connected with second and third persons who stand in a position that is superior to the speaker's. E.g.,

CHIRU	noon or lunch	OTEGAMI	letter
OKAO	face	OMIZU	water
ONANAE	name	OKARADA	body
OKUSURI	medicine	OTE	hand



Since by designation these forms are honorific, one would never say OKAO of one's own face, OTEGAMI of one's own letter, ONAMAE of one's own name, etc.

It is to be noted, however, that certain forms containing the prefix O are invariably or frequently used as a unit, without honorific connotation. E.g.,

OCHA	tea	ONAKA	stomach
OYU	hot water	OKANE	money

-----TA-RA (or DA-RA)

-RA, attached to the past forms of the verb, positive or negative, may have the meaning "when." E.g.,

HANA GA SAITARA MINI KITE KUDASAI  
"When the flowers are in bloom,  
please come to see them."

In the above example, TARA indicates that the action "to bloom" will actually take place in the future. This TARA does NOT indicate the hypothetical condition: "if", but it is used when one assumes the time when the action "to bloom" will have been completed.

KAITTARA SUGU KURU  
"When one (has come)(comes) back (to his place), immediately he will come (to my place)."

Free: "Immediately upon his return,  
he will come (to my place)."

SŌJI GA SUNDARA  
"When (one) has finished cleaning."

-----TE OKU

OKU basically means "to place"; but, following the TE forms of verbs, it is used with the meanings (a) "for the time being," "temporarily," but in anticipation of future use, need, or reference; (b) "just to leave alone."

OYU WO WAKASASETE OITE KUDASAI  
"Please have (one) prepare hot water (for future use)."



Answer the following questions in full:

- 一、このへやのそうじはいつも誰がしますか。
- 二、誰が晝はんの仕度をしますか。
- 三、あなたはせんたくを誰にさせますか。
- 四、病氣の人は大ていかお色が悪いんですか。
- 五、重い病氣の時にはねつがありませんか。
- 六、あなたのつくえの引出しは一週間に一度位かたづけますか。
- 七、あなたは昨晩るすでしたか。
- 八、どんな時にせきが沢山出ますか。
- 九、病氣の時にはどうしたら一番いゝんですか。
- 十、あなたは今のどがいたいんですか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 34

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Bring the newspaper to me as soon as it comes.
2. I usually go to bed as soon as my studies are finished.
3. I'll keep it in this drawer (for future use), so please use (it) any time.
4. I'll write down his name on this paper (for future reference).
5. This meat is just like leather, isn't it?
6. It appears that someone is here.
7. Please tell the students to bring their readers tomorrow.
8. Please ask Lt. Kanaya to stop in on his way home.
9. Shall I have the students write Japanese?
10. I'll talk to the instructor and have him prepare an easy examination (SHIKEN).

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 34

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. Two guests are supposed to come to have dinner with me tonight, so please tidy up the parlor and get ready for dinner.

2. If it's writing characters, it would probably be the best to have Mr. Tsuchiya do it.

3. Mr. Taylor, it appears that you drank a lot of beer last night; you're pale.

4. "You seem to be in low spirits; you are not ill, I suppose."

5. "It appears that I've caught a cold. I have a cough, a sore throat, and a headache. But it seems that I have only a little fever."

6. "That's too bad, isn't it? It would probably be better for you to go to bed right away. And then, (by the way) have you had the doctor come?"

7. "I had the maid go call the doctor a little while ago, but I understand the doctor is out and cannot come until after 3 o'clock."

8. I want to have this book translated; whom shall I get to translate it?

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 35 (Dai Sanjūgoka)

高木	Takagi (Takaki)	(a family name) (p.n.)
何處(どこ) か	doko-ka	somewhere (or other); anywhere See G.N., Les. 30, NANI KA, page 209.
お出掛けです	o-dekake desu	honorific form of "dekakemasu", to go out; set out.*
松山	Matsuyama	(a family name) (p.n.)
---中	---chū	during; in; within; through- out
午前中	gozen-chū	during (in) the forenoon (morning)
何處へも	doko e mo	(not going) anywhere
小石川	Koishikawa	(a ward in Tōkyō) (p.n.)
参る	mairu.	to go; come (humble form) (v.i.) (reg. verb)*
---でも	-demo	"or some(one, -thing)"; "perhaps" (indicates that one does not care much one way or the other)
友達でも	tomodachi demo	a friend or someone
御たずねです	o-tazune desu	honorific form of "tazunemasu"; to call on, visit.*
ちよつと	chotto	a little; slightly; a bit; just
御座いまして	gozaimashite	honorific form of "arimashi- te"*
金子	Kaneko	(a family name) (p.n.)
お宅	o-taku	(your, his) house or home (n.; polite)



上る	agaru	to go or come (to another's home) (v.i.; humble) (reg. verb)*
さようで御座いますか しばらく	sayō de gozaimasu ka shibaraku	humble form of "sō desu ka" for some time; for a long time
お目にかゝる	o-me ni kakaru	to meet; see (person) (humble form)
お会いになる	o-ai ni naru	honorific form of "au"; to meet*
おつしやる	ossharu	honorific form of "iu", to say*
よろしくおしやつ て下さいませんか	yoroshiku osshat- te kudasaimasen ka	won't you give (him) my best regards?
申し上げる	mōshi-ageru	humble form of "iu", to say; tell*
さあ	sā	well
おいとま	o-itoma	leave-taking; farewell (polite) (n.)
いたす	itasu	humble form of "suru", to do.*
おいとまいたし ましょう	o-itoma itashi- mashō	I think I shall be going; I must say good-bye.
じやま	jama	intrusion; interference (n.)
おじやまいたし ました	o-jama itashi- mashita	I'm afraid I bothered you; I'm sorry I interrupted you.
まあ	mā	oh, come; well (interjection in- dicating entreaty; surprise; satisfaction)
---ずに	--zu ni	----without; instead of
もう少し	mō sukoshi	a little more (longer)
あそぶ	asobu	to play; visit (v.i.) (reg. verb)
あそんでいらしや つて下さい	asonde irasshat- te kudasai	please stay and visit (lit., "visit (or play) and then go")*
お出になる	o-ide ni naru	to go; come; be (honorific form)*
---前に	---mae ni	before-----.
御用	go-yō	honorific form of "yō(ji)", business; things to attend to

(が)お有りです	(ga) o-ari desu	honorific form of (ga) "aru", to have*
御座いません	gozaimasen	honorific or humble form of "arimasen"*
それに	sore ni	besides; moreover; not only that, but-----.
何も御座いません	nani mo gozaimasen	we haven't anything special to offer you, but---(a humble stereotyped expression used when inviting someone to dinner, lunch, etc.)
御はん	go-han	a meal; cooked rice (n.)
上る	agaru	honorific form of "taberu", to eat, or "nomu", to drink*
上つていらつしや つて下さい	agatte irasshatte kudasai	please stay and have (dinner) [Lit. "Please have your dinner (lunch, drink, etc.,) and then go."]
いただく	itadaku	humble form of "taberu," to eat; "nomu," to drink.*
かまう	kamau	mind; care; trouble; concern oneself (about); to inter- fere; tease; molest.
どうぞおかまい なく	dozo o-kamai naku	please don't bother; please don't go to any trouble
おかまいいたしま せん	o-kamai itashimasen	I won't go to any trouble (for you) (humble form)
えんりよ	enryo	reserve; hesitation (n.)
どうぞ御えんりよ なく	dozo go-enryo naku	please don't stand on ceremony
お歸りになる	o-kaeri ni naru	honorific form of "kaeru", to return, go, or come home.*
お目にかける	o-me ni kakeru	honorific form of "miseru", to show.
(を)待つ	(wo) matsu	to wait (for) (v.i.) (reg. v.)*
--まし	-mashi	suffix used by women to indicate request.*

こうゆう	kō iu	this kind (sort) of; (Cf., ("konna")); see page 2, Les. 1
御らんになる	go-ran ni naru	honorific form of "miru", to see*
はいけんする	haiken suru	see; have a look at; inspect (humble form)*
上海	Shanghai	Shanghai (p.n.)
何ですか	nan desu ka---	as to what it is
何ですか 私にも 分りません	nan desu ka wata- kushi nimo wakarimasen	(I) can't tell (determine) what it is either.
お手紙には何とも 書いて御座い ませんのですか	o-tegami niwa nantomo kaite gozaimasen no desu ka	Isn't there anything written (about it) in the letter?

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

## Lesson 35

## Verbs in honorific and humble form

1. In the case of certain common verbs, the words in themselves carry connotations that are honorific of the second or third person. They are, therefore, not used with the first person and are not prefixed by O. E.g.,

AGARU.....to eat, drink.  
KUDASARU.....to give (to the first  
person or to someone  
connected with the  
first person).  
IRASSHARU.....to come, go, be  
OSSHARU.....to say

2. O plus the conjunctive stem of a verb plus NI NARU is a way of making the verb honorific and, therefore, is used to describe the actions of a second or third person who is recognized as being in a position that is superior to the speaker's. E.g.,

OAI NI NARU.....to meet  
OIDE NI NARU\*.....to go, come, be\*  
OKAERI NI NARU.....to return, go or come home

\*OIDE NI NARU, like IRASSHARU, means "to come," "to go," and "to be," depending on the context. Like IRASSHARU, it takes the place of IRU in making progressive forms in TE-IRU honorific. E.g.,

TEGAMI WO KAITE OIDE NI NARIMASU.  
 "(He) is writing a letter."

3. A noun that is already honorific in connotation plus NI  
MARU is also a way of making the phrase honorific and, therefore,  
is used to describe the actions of a second or third person who is  
recognized as being in a position that is superior to the speaker's.  
E.g.,

E WO GORAN\* MI HARIMASU  
 "(He) looks at a picture."

\*The form RAN in GORAN does not occur by itself.

4. An honorific noun plus DESU is also a way of making the phrase honorific and, therefore, is used to describe the actions of a second or third person who is recognized as being in a position that is superior to the speaker's. E.g.,



TOMODACHI WO OTAZUNE DESU KA

"Are you going to call on your friend?"

KYŌ WA ODEKAKE DESU KA

"Are you going out today?"

GOYŌ GA OARI DESU KA

"Do you have business to attend to?"

5. O plus the conjunctive stem of a verb plus KUDASARU (with the action performed or to be performed in favor of the speaker) is also honorific. E.g.,

CHOTTO OMACHI KUDASAI

"Please wait a minute."

6. Certain verbs are humble in themselves, and are used when the subject (in the first, second, or third person) acknowledges, or is made to acknowledge, the superior position of a second or third person. E.g.,

AGARU.....to visit

GOZARU (GOZAIMASU)..to be

HAIKEN SURU.....to look at

MAIRU.....to come, go

MOSHIAGERU.....to tell, say

ITADAKU.....to receive, eat, drink

ITASU.....to do

7. O plus the conjunctive stem of a verb plus ITASU is a way of making the verb very humble and therefore usable only with the first person (or someone or something connected with the first person) as subject. E.g.,

OKAMAI ITASHIMASENDESHITA

"I didn't go to any trouble (for you)."

ZU (NI)

The imperfective stem of verbs plus ZU (NI) is a negative form used at the end of clauses that are not the last in a sentence, ZU is the conjunctive stem of the negative inflected suffix -NU or N. (ZU is attached to the imperfective stem of SE of SURU.)

KUDASAI MASHI (or MASE)

Women, and inferiors speaking to superiors, may sometimes add MASHI or MASE to KUDASAI to make a polite request.

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 35

Translate the following into honorific or humble Japanese sentences:

1. What are you going to put into this room?
2. What did the teacher say?
3. (He) is here.
4. Are you teaching Japanese?
5. Have you forgotten me?
6. Do you have a car?
7. Do you have some business to attend to?
8. Pardon my interruption.
9. I'm sorry I interrupted you.
10. I think I'll be leaving now.
11. I won't go to any trouble for you.
12. Please don't hesitate to ask.
13. Are you well?
14. Are you studying?
15. I'm going to Mr. Tekawa's (house).
16. I shall tell you later.
17. I don't smoke.
18. I'm not going today.
19. What did you read?
20. He hasn't returned yet.

Change the words in the following sentences into the honorific or humble forms:

一 そう言わないでもう少しおそんで行つて下さい。

二 はい、用事がありますからもう歸りましょう。

三 今朝どこかへ行きますか。

四 ちよつと用事があつてレナハンさんの家へ行かなければなりません。

五 私（わたし）はモア（モア）さんのおくさんには長く會いませんが會つたらよろしく言つて下さい。

六 私はまだあの人の手紙を見たことがありません。

七 何もありませんが御はんを食べて行つて下さい。

八 あなたは日本のしば居を見たことがありますか。

九 おなかがすきますから御はんはあとで食べます。

十 それでは歸りましょう、おじやました。

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 36 (Dai Sanjūrokka)

今度の	kondo no	the next; the present; the forthcoming (adj.)
神戸(こうべ)	Kōbe	(a port-city near Ōsaka) (p.n.)
---行	---yuki	for; bound for
急行(列車)	kyūkō (ressha)	express (train) (n.)
---等	---tō	class; grade (n.)
一二等	ichi-ni-tō	first and second class
着く	tsuku	to arrive; get to (v.i.) (reg. verb)
四十分	yon-jip-pun (shi-jip-pun)	40 minutes
三ノ宮	Sanno miya	(a station in the district by the same name in the city of Kōbe) (p.n.)
特急	tok-kyū	special express train (n.) (abbreviation of "toku- betsu <u>kyūko</u> ressha")
明日になります	ashita ni narisasu	it will be tomorrow (meaning in this instance that today's "tokkyū" has already left and one cannot avail oneself of it until tomorrow)
新橋	Shimbashi	(a station in Tōkyō (p.n.))
(に)乗る	(ni) noru	to board, to get on (v.i.) (reg. verb)
品川	Shinagawa	(a station in Tōkyō) (p.n.)
とまる	tomaru	to stop; to come to a stop (v.i.) (reg. verb)
片道	katanichi	one-way
神戸二等片道 一枚	Kōbe nitō kata- michi ichimai	one second-class one-way ticket to Kōbe



--- 券(けん)	---ken	a --- ticket
寢台	shindai	a berth; a bed (n.)
寢台券	shindai-ken	sleeper ticket
急行券と寢台券 も	kyūkōken to shin- dai-ken mo	express and sleeper tickets, too (Cf., kyūkōken mo shindai-ken mo "both the express and the sleeper ticket"; "the express ticket as well as the sleeper ticket")
上	ue	upper (n.)
よろしい	yoroshii	good; all right (adj.)
よろしゅう御 座います	yoroshū gozaimasu	honorific form of ii desu (Cf., Les. 5, <u>MINATO</u> , page 22) (Syn. <u>kekko</u> de gozaimasu)
(noun)+でよろ しゅう御座います	(noun) de yoroshū gozaimasu	(noun) will do; be all right *
賣切れる	urikireru	to be sold out (v.i.) (semi-reg. verb)
仕方	shikata	a way; a method (n.)
仕方がありません	shikata ga arimasen	It can't be helped; I can't help it; It is inevitable.
けつこう	kekko	fine; splendid (n.)
さてけつ こうです	(noun) de kekko desu	(noun) will be fine
両方(両方)	ryōhō	both; both sides (n.)
両方で---です	ryōhō de --- desu	it will be---for the two (DE ----" within the limits of")
トランク	toranku	trunk (n.)
だけ	dake	just; only
チェックにする	chikku ni suru	to check (baggage)
スーツケース	sūtokesu	suitcase
持ちこむ	mochi-komu	to bring in; carry in (v.t.) (reg. verb)

どちらへ	dochira e	to what place; thither; where (to) (syn. doko e)
番 號	bangō	the number; (a) number (n.) (Cf., Bangō! "count off!" (Command))
何 番	nanban	what number
番 號 は 何 番 ですか	bangō wa nanban desu ka	what is the number?
七 號 車	shichi-gō-sha	car No. 7
三 番	san-ban	No. 3
切 符	kippu	ticket (n.)
お借りいたします	o-kari-itashimasu	humble form of "karimasu", to borrow.
あづける	azukeru	to leave (a thing with a person); entrust (a person with a thing); deposit (in a bank) (v.t.) (semi-reg. verb)
あづけて参り ますから	azukete-mari- masu kara	I'll go and check it, you see.

## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 36

#### DE(MO)

DE(MO) Singles out a thing or fact for consideration: "even", "perhaps." Often used in a sentence containing a conjectural or conditional form. E.g.,

SHINDAI MA UE DE(MO) \* YOROSHŪ GOZAIMASU KA  
"Would it be all right even if it is an upper-  
berth?"

Free: "Will an upper-berth do?"

UE DE(MO) \* KKKŌ DESU  
"The upper one will be fine."

\* As is in the textbook, MO is often understood.

Prepare the questions for the following statements:

一、外ではたばこをおのみになつてもよろしゅう御座います。

二、私はちよつと用事があつて學校まで参ります。

三、私はモントレーから午前七時の急行に乗ります。

四、あの急行は明朝の十時にサンフランシスコに着くはずです。

五、今度のシカゴ行は午後二時二十五分です。

六、東京急行片道二等一枚と急行券で五十五圓五十錢です。

七、寢台券は皆賣切れしました。

八、今度のは特急ですから新橋にはとまりません。

九、こんな大きいトランクは汽車の中に持ちこむ訳にはいきません。  
どうぞチツキにして下さい。

十、神戸には明朝十時半に着きます。



## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 36

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. When you check your suitcase, it costs 10 sen a day.
2. This is expensive, isn't it?
3. This road is wide, isn't it?
4. Since that train is slow, it will arrive here tomorrow.
5. Where are you going on your next vacation?
6. This time I translated it from beginning to end by myself.
7. Won't you take me with you next time you go?
8. The first-class tickets are all sold out.
9. Will tomorrow be all right?
10. One can't help but forget characters from time to time.

## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 36

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. It is cheaper to buy one round-trip (ŌFUKU) ticket than it is to buy two one-way tickets.
2. When you check trunks and suitcases and the like you must show your tickets.
3. I understand that the 9:30 train stops for only 3 minutes at this station.
4. My room number is No. 28. Please come for a visit (to visit me).
5. Of the upper-berth and lower-berth, why is the upper-berth cheaper?
6. The next Tōkyō-bound 3rd class express will leave at 11:35 and arrive at Tōkyō tomorrow morning at 8:30.
7. When one rides on an express in Japan, one must buy an express ticket.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 37 (Dai Sanjūshichika)

交換手(こうかん 手)	kōkanshu	telephone operator (n.) (kōkan, "exchange"; -shu, "person")
二十四百九十七番	futa-sen yon-hyaku kyūjū nana ban	2497 or 24-97 (The KUN reading is used in telephoning to avoid confusion)
料金	ryōkin	fee; charge; fare (n.) (note; ryō by itself means "charge"; ryō-kin thus makes the idea concrete)
---よ	---yo	an emphatic suffix used to call the attention of the one addressed.
お出になりました	o-de ni narima- shita	you are connected; here is your party (Lit. "came out (to the phone)").
もしもし	moshi-moshi	hello
内田	Uchida	(a family name) (p.n.)
あなたは内田さんのお宅ですか	anata wa Uchida- san no o-taku desu ka	Is this Mr. Uchida's residence?
違ふ	chigau	to be different; be mistaken; "you have the wrong number"
しつれい	shitsurei	discourtesy; rudeness (n.)
それはしつれい いたしました	sore wa shitsurei itashimashita	Oh, I beg your pardon; I'm sorry (to have bothered you); pardon (my mistake)
こちら	kochira	this place; this side; we; I (n.) (kochira wa, "the one at this end")
こちらは内田で 御座います	kochira wa Uchida de gozaimasu	this is Uchida's (residence)
どなた様	donata sama	(honorific form of "dare", who)

中 川	Nakagawa	(a family name) (p.n.)
正 雄	Masao	( a masculine given name) (p.n.)
お出です	o-ide desu	to be; come; go (honorific form)
お出ですか	o-ide desu ka	is (X) in? (is (X) going, or coming?)
今	tadainma	right now; presently; now; right away
少々	shōshō	a little (more literary form of "sukoshi", a little)
旦那	danna	master; husband (n.)
旦那様	danna (sama)	Sir (shopkeepers often address their gentlemen customers; maids; their employers; wives, their husbands as "danna (sama)"
お待たせいたしました	o-matase itashi-mashita	I'm sorry I kept you waiting
僕 (ぼく)	boku	masculine intimate form of "watakushi", I
---が	---ga	and---("ga" at the end of a sentence makes it less abrupt)
今晚	komban	this evening; tonight
うかがう	ukagau	to visit; call on (v.t.) (reg. verb)
おうかがいする	o-ukagai suru	humble form of "ukagau"
約束(やくそく)	yakushoku	promise; engagement; agreement (n.)
急 用	kyūyō	urgent business (n.)
急用が出来た	kyūyō ga dekita	some urgent business has come up



あしからず

ashikarazu

I hope you will understand;  
please don't take it  
amiss.

ざんねん

zannen

regret; disappointment; chagrin  
(n.)

それはざんねん  
ですね

sore wa zannen  
desu ne

well, that's too bad; that's a  
pity

明 晩

myōban

tomorrow evening

さしつかえ  
ありません

sashitsukae  
arimasen

I have no previous engagement;  
I am free; I am not engaged

さよなら

sayonara (cor-  
ruption of  
"sayō nara")

good-bye

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 37

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. I'm sorry I kept you waiting.
2. I'm sorry I was out (away from home) yesterday.
3. It's regrettable that I wasn't able to meet him.
4. I'm sorry, but I can't very well go to your house today.
5. If you are free this evening, please come.
6. Tomorrow night I have a previous engagement and can't call on you; I hope you will understand.
7. What is Mr. Takawa's telephone number?
8. Don't forget your promise.
9. I'll borrow this magazine for a day or two.
10. I'll call on you day after tomorrow.

Lesson 37

Write 20 sentences in telephone conversation style,  
using such words as the following:

1. もしもし

11. さしつかえ

2. お宅

12. うかがい

3. そうです

13. 急用

4. こちらは

14. やくそく

5. 私は

15. 如何ですか

6. お待ち下さい

16. それでは

7. お電話

17. しつれい

8. 只今

18. 明晩

9. おしからず

19. 今晚

10. ざんねん

20. 呼ぶ

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 38 (Dai Sanjūhakkā)

丸の内	Marunouchi	( a district in Tōkyō) (p.n.)
銀行	ginkō	a bank (n.)
つとめる	tsutomeru	to be employed; work (v.i.) (semi-reg. verb)
青山	Aoyama	(a district in Tōkyō) (p.n.)
住む	sumu	to reside; dwell; live (in a place) (v.i.) (reg. verb)
みょうじ	myōji	surname (n.)
春雄	Haruo	(a masculine given name) (p.n.)
秋子	Akiko	(a feminine given name) (p.n.)
太郎	Tarō	(a masculine given name; usually the first son. "-ro" is usually suffixed to masculine names) (p.n.)
花子	Hanako	(a feminine given name. "-ko" (child), is often suffixed to feminine names) (p.n.)
次郎	Jirō	( a masculine given name; usually the second son) (p.n.)
長男	chōnan	eldest son (n.)
二番目の花子	ni-ban-me no Hanako	Hanako, the second (child) *
長女	chōjō	eldest daughter (n.)
赤んぼ	akambō	baby (n.)
お父さん	otōsan	father (n.)
むすこ	musuko	son; boy (n.)
むすめ	musume	daughter; girl (n.)



きょうだい	kyōdai	brothers; brothers and sisters (n.)
兄	ani	elder brother (n.)
弟	otōto	younger brother (n.)
妹	imōto	younger sister (n.)
姉	ane	elder sister (n.)
友三郎	Tomosaburo (Yuzaburō)	(a masculine given name) (p.n.)
おじいさん	ojiisan	grandfather; old man (n.)
まご	mago	grandchild (n.)
おばあさん	obāsan	grandmother; old woman (n.)
たっしや	tassha	healthy; well hale and hearty (n.)
田舎(いなか)	inaka	the country; rural district (n.)
兄さん	niisan	elder brother (n.)
英一	Eiichi	(a masculine given name) (p,n,)
金一郎	Kin-ichirō	(a masculine given name) (p.n.)
銀二郎	Ginjiro	(a masculine given name) (p.n.)
新三郎	Shinzaburō	(a masculine given name) (p.N.)
雪子	Yukiko	(a feminine given name) (p.n.)
いとこ	itoko	cousin (n.) ("itoko-dōshi", cousins)
おじさん	ojisan	uncle (n.) ("Mr."---the form a child uses in addressing a stranger.)
道子	Michiko	(a feminine given name) (p.n.)
おばさん	obasan	aunt (n.) ("Lady"---the form used by children in ad- dressing strangers.)

弟 兄 oi nephew (n.)

妹 妹 mei niece (n.)

### GRAMMATICAL NOTES

#### Lesson 38

#### NIBAN-ME NO HANAKO

As has been explained in Lesson 2, page 8, a noun followed by NO forms a quasi-adjective. However, it should be noted that some quasi-adjectives indicate nouns in apposition or noun attribute when translated into English. E.g.,

#### NIBAN-IE NO HANAKO

"Hanako, the second (child)."

Answer the following questions in complete sentences in Japanese:

一 あなたは今どこに住んで居ますか。

二 あなたのお父さんは今どこにいつとめて居ますか。

三 あなたのおじいさんやおばあさんは今でもたつしやですか。

四 あなたには「おい」や「めい」が何人ありますか。

五 此のがつこうにいつとめて居る日本語の先生を何人知つて居ますか。

六 あなたのおじいさんのきょうだいやおじさんやおばあさんの中に有名な人が居ますか。

七 あなたのきょうだいやおいの中にせんそうでなくなつた人が居ますか。

八 あなたの先生のみようじは何と言つてどこに住んでいらつしやいますか。

九 あなたにはきょうだいがいくたりありますか。

十 あなたのおじいさんのせうごの子供はあなたの何でですか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 30

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. My oldest brother has gone to Japan.
2. Miss Haruko is a country girl, so she is very energetic.
3. When my older sister's child is born, I will be an uncle.
4. My niece lived in the country before coming here.
5. Those two are cousins, but do not resemble each other very much.
6. How many brothers and sisters do you have?
7. His uncle works in a certain bank.
8. His grandmother is making preparations for lunch.
9. My oldest son, Taro, is 6.
10. I met Miss Haruko when I was in Sendai.



## Supplementary E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 38

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. The children of the brothers and sisters of your mother and father are your cousins.
2. "I dropped in since I came to this neighborhood; is Miss Akiko in?"
3. "I made her go to sleep a little while ago because it appears that she had a cold and some fever."
4. On my next vacation, I want to call on my grandfather who lives in Seattle.
5. My eldest son, Haruo, worked in the Bank of Japan (NIPPON GINKO) in Tōkyō until last year, but at present he resides in Shanghai.
6. "Do you have a grandfather and a grandmother?" "I have a grandmother. She is 80 this year, and is in good health even now."
7. My father came to the United States of America with his wife in 1900, and at present has 3 sons and 2 daughters.
8. "Mr. Smith, what's the name of your new teacher?" "I am told that his surname is Aoki, and his given name is Shin-ichi."
9. My brother's son is my nephew, and his daughter is my niece.
10. Toshio's second son went to war and died two years ago.

VOCABULARY

Lesson 39 (Dai Sanjūkuka)

電車	densha	street car (n.)
すいぶん	suibun	very; extremely; quite (adv.)
こむ	komu	to be crowded (v.i.) (reg. v.)
中々---ません	naka naka---masen	not easily; not readily; by no means; not nearly
中々扱けられ ませんでした	naka naka kakera- remasen deshita	I had a hard time getting a seat; (I found it difficult to sit down)
一つかわ	tsurikawa	a strap (in a street car)
つかまる	tsukamaru	to hold on to; catch hold of (v.i.) (reg. verb)
やっと	yatto	at last; with difficulty; barely (adv.)
車掌(車しょう)	shashō	conductor (n.)
切符を切る	kippu wo kiru	to punch tickets
拾	jū	ten
かいすうけん	kaisūken	book of tickets; commutation tickets (n.)
氣の毒	kinodoku	regret or concern (felt for others)
お氣のどく様です	o-kinodoku sama desu	I'm sorry (for your sake)
おつり	o-tsuri	change (money given back after price of goods (fare, fee) has been taken out of amount handed over)
答える	kotaeru	to reply; answer (v.t.) (semi-reg. verb)
おうふく	ōfuku	round trip
貳	ni	two

出す	dasu	to put (get) out; to pay; to proffer
聞く	kiku	to ask; listen; hear (v.t.) (reg. verb) (Cf., TANOMU "to ask (a favor)" TAZUNERU "to ask (for information)")
のりかえ	norikae	a transfer (n.)
(と)いっしょに	(to) issho ni	together (with); along (with) (adv.)
渡す	watasu	to hand (over); give (v.t.) (reg. verb)
日比谷(日比谷)	Hibiya	(a place in Tōkyō) (p.n.)
おりる	oriru	get off; come (go) down; get down (v.i.) (semi-reg. verb)
丁度一來して居た	chōdo---kite-ita	(which) happened to be there (i.e., had just come up and was right there)
向側	mukōgawa	the other (opposite) side (n.)
ところ	tokoro	place; a spot; locality (n.)
電車のところ	densha no tokoro	("tokoro" should not be translated here, In Japanese you do not say "go to the street car")
たずねる	tazuneru	to ask; inquire (v.t.) (semi-reg.) (Cf., KINU, TANOMU. See above)
青山は此のあとです	Aoyama wa kono ato desu	the next one is the Aoyama (street-car); the one for Aoyama is the next one.
おしえる	oshieru	to inform; teach (v.t.) (semi-reg.)
明治神宮	Meiji Jingū	the Meiji Shrine
外苑	gaien	the outer gardens (of the Meiji Shrine)
そして	soshite	and; then

--- たらいいん (interrog. word) -- (where) --- should (one) ---?  
 ですか -tara ii n' desu ka

町目 chōme (a section of a "cho" or "machi")

長い間 nagai aida a long time

まだ中々です mada naka naka desu it's a long ways yet; it's still quite a while (ways)

もどる modoru to go (come) back; return; turn back (v.i.) (reg. verb)

左側 hidarigawa the left (hand) side (n.)

少しもどって  
 右側です sukoshi modotte hidarigawa desu it's (on) the left hand side a little ways back; If you go back a little ways, you will find (the outer gardens) on the left hand side.



Answer the following questions in full:

一、ふ通汽車のおうふく切ぶは何日間使えますか。

二、此の町には電車が通つて居ますか。

三、あなたは次の休にはどちらへお出になる積りですか。

四、此の次の休までにはまだしばらくありますか。

五、電車の車しようは何をしますか。

六、かいすうけんはなぜ便利ですか。

七、七十五銭のものを買つて一円出すとおつりをいくら渡しいく  
川ますうか。

八、ここからシカゴへ行くにはどこで汽車を乗りかえなければなり  
ませんか。

九、ここから日本へ行くのはどこまで汽車で行つて、どこから  
船に乗つたらいいんでしょうか。

十、あなたは日本語が上手に話せるまでにはまだ中々ですか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 39

Translate the following sentences into Japanese:

1. When I asked the conductor, "That street-car should I get on in order to go to Marunouchi?" the conductor replied, "Get off at the next (stop) and take the Hibiya-bound (street-car) please."

2. "Is this streetcar always crowded?" "No, it's quite empty (SUITE HASU) from about 3 to 5 o'clock."

3. When I said, "One round-trip, Aoyama itchō-me," the conductor handed me the change and a transfer and told me, "You transfer at the next (stop)."

4. The conductor came when I was on the streetcar and said, "Please let me punch your tickets."

5. I got on the Aoyama-bound streetcar, but there was no place to sit down, so I hang on to a strap.

6. It was just three months ago that I started to study Japanese

7. Since it was too crowded when I boarded the streetcar, I paid the fare when I got off.

8. When I asked the conductor, "Where is the book store called Tōkyō-dō?" the conductor told me, "Get off at the next (stop) then you will find it on the right-hand side."

9. What would you say if a foreigner asked, "Does the street-car for Meiji Jingu pass by here?"

10. I bought a Japanese-English dictionary; gave (him) five yen; and then the book store salesman handed (me) fifty sen change with the book.

# VOCABULARY

## Lesson 40 (Dai Yonjikka)

手袋 (てぶくろ)	tebukuro	glove (s) (n.)
---たいと思つて	---tai to omotte	hoping to ---.
銀座	Ginza	(a district in Tōkyō) (p.n.)
今日は	kon-nichi wa	how do you do; good-day
いらっしゃいませ	irasshaimashi	welcome (an expression used by shopkeepers in greeting their customers) *
いくつも	ikutsu-mo	many; any number (Cf., Les. 12, HANGEN HO, page 64)
いくら	ikura	how much
もっと	motto	more; still more; --er (as in "motto okii," Larger)
舶来品 (はく来品)	hakurai-hin	imported article (n.)
こちら	kochira	this one (these) (over here) (pronoun)
参	san	three
違つた	chigatta	different
如何程	ikahodo	how much (an expression used by women)
あちら	achira	that (one over there); the other (Syn. are) (pronoun)
同値	dō-ne	the same price (n.)
(この色)で	(kono iro) <u>de</u>	in (this color) (DE---within the limits of---)
あいにく	ainiku	unfortunately; as luck would have it; I'm sorry; it is a pity (adv.)

切らす	kirasu	to run out of; run short; be sold out; be out of stock (v.t.) (wo) kirashite iru "is out of"
ながら	nagara	while (suffix denoting two simultaneous actions by one person)
値段	nedan	price (n.)
形	katachi	form; shape; style (n.)
形	kata	form; size; design; pattern (n.)
にあう	niau	to be becoming; to suit one; be like (a person); to match well (v.i.) (reg. verb)
いただく	itadaku	to get; receive; to eat (v.t.) (reg. verb)
包む	tsutsumu	to wrap (v.t.) (reg. verb)
他に何か	hoka ni nani ka--	(do you wish) something else? anything else? Cf., Les. 24, page 157
それだけです	sore dake desu	that's all
左様で御座いますか	sayō de gozaimasu ka	Oh, all right; is that right? I see.
またどうぞ	mata dōzo	(please come) again
壹	ichi	one
拂う	harau	to pay (v.t.) (reg. verb)
受取	uketori	receipt (n.)
毎度	maido	every time; often; constantly
毎度有りがとうございます	maido arigatō gozaimasu	thank you (for your repeated patronage) (expression used by shopkeepers)



## GRAMMATICAL NOTES

### Lesson 40

#### IRASSHAI

The conjunctive stems of five regular verbs ending in ---RU are irregular in that the R preceding I is omitted.

E.G.,

<u>Conclusive or Attributive</u>	<u>Conjunctive</u>
1. GOZARU (to be)	GOZAI
2. NASARU (to do)	Nasai
3. OSSHARU (to say)	OSSHAI
4. KUDASARU (to give)	KUDASAI
5. IRASSHARU (to be, come, and go)	IRASSHAI

Answer the following questions in full:

一、手ぶくろを買いたい時にはどこへ行かなければなりませんか。

二、店でももの、値段を知りたい時には店の人に何と言つてたづねますか。

三、青い手ぶくろを買いたい時、店の人が茶色の手ぶくろを出して見せたらあなたは何と言いますか。

四、くつを買いたい時、店の人があんまり高いのを見せてくれた時にはあなたは何と言いますか。

五、店の人があんまり大きいぼうしを出してくれた時にはあなたは何と言つて小さいのを見せてもらいますか。

六、参田九拾錢の手ぶくろと拾八円のくつでは兩方でいくらになり  
ますか。

七、十五円二拾七錢の物を買つて二十円さつを拂うといくらのおつりを  
くれますか。

八、ものを買つて店を出る時には店の人に何と言つて出ますか。

九、もう英語を話さない日本人の店でもものを買うことが出来ますか。

十、店でもものを買うと大抵いそれを何に入れてくれますか。

## E-J Translation Exercises

### Lesson 40

Translate the following into Japanese:

1. He may give me a little more of those.
2. Do you have some more?
3. The maid sang while cleaning the room.
4. Shall I wrap it up in paper?
5. I gave that to my younger brother.
6. I intend to go to a different place next time.
7. A person whom I know works in that store.
8. Don't you have anything a little better at this price?
9. Give me two more of these.
10. Please choose two books from among these.

















LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 033 261 139 2